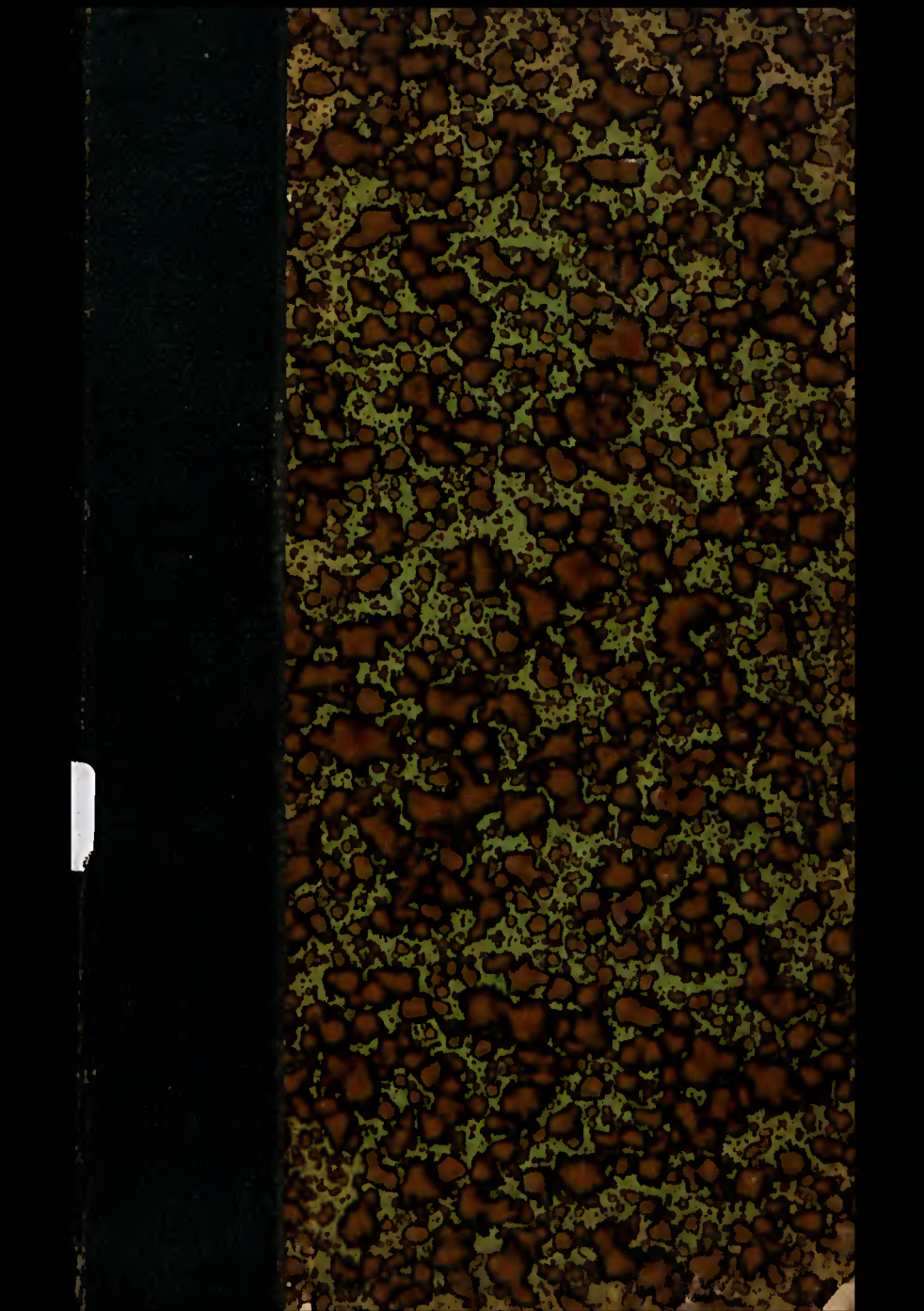
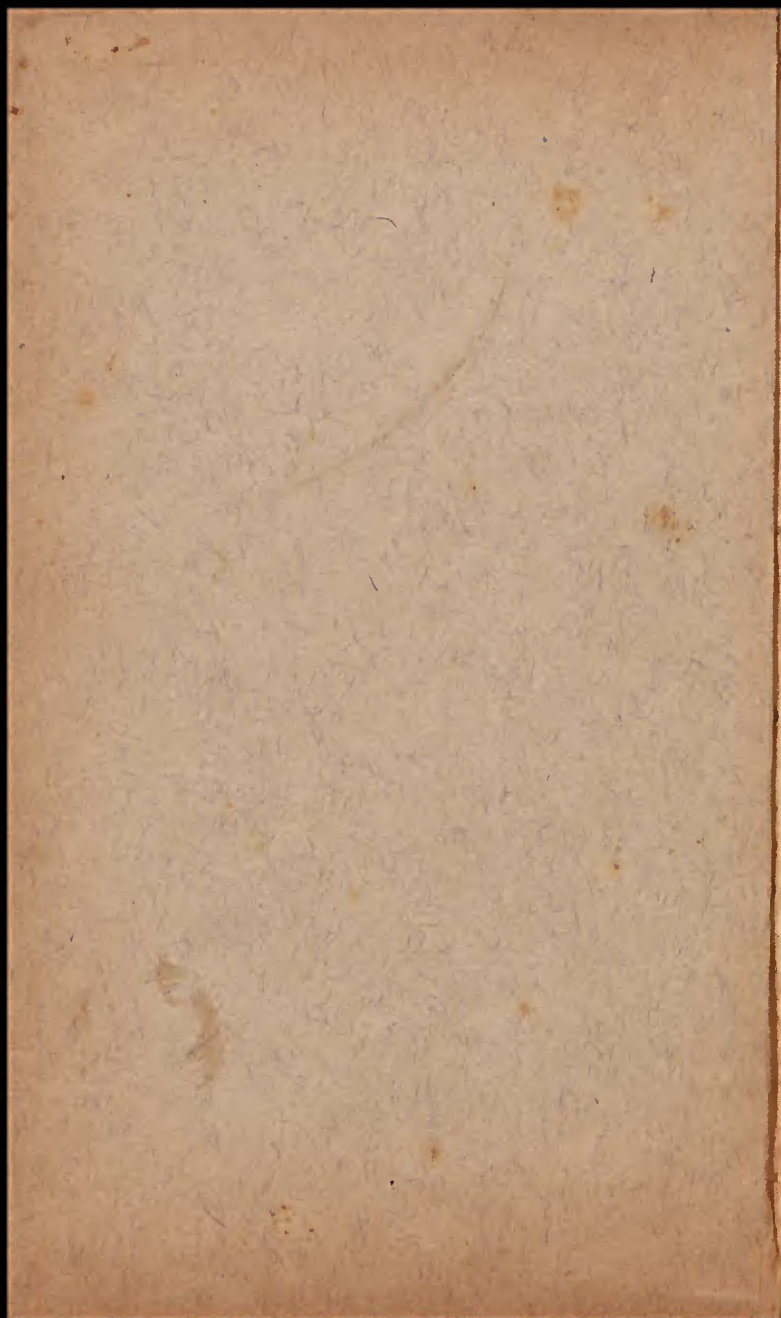










THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

LATIN PRIMER.





38

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

LATIN PRIMER

EDITED WITH THE SANCTION OF THE HEAD MASTERS
OF THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS INCLUDED IN
HER MAJESTY'S COMMISSION

*Ordinis haec virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,
Pleraque differat et praesens in tempus omittat.*

Hor. ad Pis. 42

NEW IMPRESSION

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON
NEW YORK, BOMBAY, AND CALCUTTA

1912



Reprinted from the Edition of 1879



PREFACE.

THE 'Public School Latin Primer' was not put forth by its compilers as a First Book for children beginning Latin in preparatory schools or with private teachers, but as a concise manual of facts and code of rules in Latin, to be memorially learnt, with suitable practice, in those departments of Public Schools to which its contents are applicable. It was not supposed that all sections and parts of sections in the first ninety pages would be learnt in a first memorial course; nor was it doubted that some passages in accidence would be sufficiently taught by means of questions and answers. These they held to be matters of detail, which could only be left to the judgment of those who teach or direct the mode of teaching. For the facilitation of these lessons to young beginners they relied (1) on the use of good Help-books, adapted to the Primer, leading up to it, and referring to it; and (2) on the 'vis viva' of good teaching, without which all must fail. Of such Help-books many have been published by various authors of large experience in teaching, and, as some of these have passed through numerous editions, they seem to have answered their purpose.





cm

1

2

3

4

5

unesp

8

9

10

11

THE
PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

ETYMOLOGY.

THE LETTERS.

§ 1. The Latin ALPHABET now in use is the English without W. The Letters have two forms : (1) the Capital, or ancient ; and (2) the Small, or modern form.

(1) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P

(2) a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p

Q R S T U V X Y Z.

q r s t u v x y z.

§ 2. The VOWELS, *sounding by themselves*, are a, e, i, o, u, y,
I and u are called Semi-consonant Vowels.

§ 3. The CONSONANTS *sound with Vowels* : of these

The Mutes are b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t :

The Nasals are m, n :

The Liquids are l, r :

The Spirants f, h, j, s, v :

The Double, x and z, express two letters each, cs, ds.

1. K remains in a few words before a : as, Kalendae.

2. Y and z only in words from the Greek : as, Dryas. zona.

3. Q blends with u or v : as, quis or quis.

§ 4. Latin has three usual DIPHTHONGS (double vowels)
æ (æ), oe (œ), au : three seldom used, ei, eu, ui.



§ 5. Latin is spelt by SYLLABLES, as English.

§ 6. The Quantity of syllables is short (˘), long (—), or doubtful (≈), as the vowels are short, long, or doubtful: fūgērīs.

A Vowel may be—

- (1) Short or long by nature: āmās.
- (2) Short by nature, but long by position: vīndēx. § 162. 4.
- (3) Short by nature, but doubtful by position: quādrūplo. § 162. 6.

§ 7. Diphthongs are long.

§ 8. The modern Stops are used in Latin.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. The PARTS OF SPEECH, or WORDS, are of three kinds:
I. NOUNS; II. VERB; III. PARTICLES.

I. (1) The SUBSTANTIVE names something:

Rex, a king; **Caesār**, Caesar.

- (a) Names of Persons and Places are PROPER NAMES.
All others are COMMON NOUNS.

(2) The ADJECTIVE attributes Quality:

Mārē vastum, the vast sea.

Vastum is called an ATTRIBUTE or EPITHET of mārē.*

(3) The PRONOUN stands for Substantive or Adjective.

Tū, thou; **mānūs haec**, this hand.

II. (4) The VERB states what something is, does, or suffers: }

Hōmīnēs cānunt, men sing.†

* A Substantive attributively joined to another Substantive is called its APPOSITE:
Croesus rex Lydōrum, Croesus, king of the Lydians; where rex is Apposite to Croesus, and agrees with it in Case.

† **Hōmīnēs** is called the SUBJECT.
Cānunt is called the PREDICATE.

When we say,

Mors est propinquā, death is nigh,

Mors is the Subject;

Est is called the COPULA;

Propinquā is called the COMPLEMENT;

And Copula with Complement is the Predicate. § 87.

NOUNS.

VERB.

III. (5) The ADVERB shews Where, When, or How :

Hūc currē **nunc** cēlērītēr, *run hither now quickly.*

(6) The PREPOSITION governs the Case of a Noun ; and shews the relation of it to some other word :

Stō **ad** fōrēs, *I stand at the door.*

(7) The CONJUNCTION links words and clauses :

Ōvēs **et** āvēs, *sheep and birds.*

(8) The INTERJECTION is an exclamation :

Eccē ningīt, *lo, it snows.*

PARTICLES.

Note. There is no Article in Latin like *a, an, the*, in English. Thus *lux* may mean a *light*, the *light*, or simply *light*.

§ 10. Hence the Parts of Speech may be called eight :

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, | 5. Adverb, |
| 2. Adjective, | 6. Preposition, |
| 3. Pronoun, | 7. Conjunction, |
| 4. Verb, | 8. Interjection, |

Which have Flexion.

Which are without Flexion.*

§ 11. (1) The changes made in a word, in order to vary its meaning, are called its FLEXION.

(2) Nouns are DECLINED.

Verbs are CONJUGATED.

(3) A Noun has three ACCIDENTS : NUMBER, CASE, GENDER ; A Verb five : VOICE, MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, PERSON.

[a. The STEM is that part of a word on which the changes of Flexion are based.

b. A Flexional addition at the end of the Stem is called an ENDING or SUFFIX.

c. The last letter of the Stem is called the CHARACTER, and in this book is often indicated by a Capital.

d. The Stem of a Noun is usually discerned by casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural : † *mensa-*, *dōmīno-*, *lēon-*, *māri-*, *grādu-* *diē-*.

e. The Stem of a Verb is shewn in the Imperative Mood : *āma-*, *audi-*, *mōne-*. But in the Third Conjugation *-ē* must be cast off : *rēg-ē* ; and in a Deponent Verb *-rē* or *ērē* : *fa-rē*, *re-rē*, *lān-ērē*.

f. The Root is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in *āgītārē*, *āgīta-* is the Stem, but *ag-* the Root, as shewn by comparing *āg-ērē*, *ag-men*. And *g* is the Root-character.]

* Except the Comparison of Adverbs, § 37.

† Casting off *-rum* in the First, Second, and Fifth Declensions ; *-um* in the Third and Fourth.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 12. The Substantive is declined by Number and Case: the Adjective by Number, Case, and Gender, agreeing in these with its Substantive. See § 9 (2).

§ 13. The Numbers are two:

1. SINGULAR, speaking of one, *mensă, a table*;
2. PLURAL, of more than one, *mensae, tables*.

§ 14. The Cases are six.

Answers the question

1. NOMINATIVE . . .	Who or what?	Quis dedit? . . .	Vir,
		Who gave? . . .	A man.
2. VOCATIVE (Case of one addressed) . . .			Vir,
			O man.
3. ACCUSATIVE . . .	Whom or what?	Quem videt? . . .	Virum,
		Whom see I? . . .	A man.
4. GENITIVE . . .	Whose or whereof?	Cujus donum? . . .	Virī,
		Whose gift? . . .	A man's.
5. DATIVE . . .	To or for whom or what?	Cui datum? . . .	Virō,
		To whom given? . . .	To a man.
6. ABLATIVE * . . .	By, with, &c., whom or what?	Ā quō datum? . . .	Ā virō,
		By whom given? . . .	By a man.

§ 15. The Genders are three: 1. MASCULINE; 2. FEMININE; 3. NEUTER. A Substantive which may be either Masculine or Feminine is said to be COMMON to both Genders.

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 16. There are five Declensions of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of their Genitives —

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	i	is	ūs	ei
Gen. Plur.	Arum	Orum	um† or ūm	Uum	Erum

§ 17. (1) In Neuter Nouns, the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative are the same in each Number severally; and in the Plural they end in *a*.

(2) The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in Singular Nouns of the Second Declension like *dōminūs, filiūs*.

(3) The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

* Many English Particles may be signs of the Latin Ablative: *by, with, from, in, upon, of, for, at, than*.

The Consonant before *um* is the Character. See § 11 c; § 21 (a).

THE FIRST DECLENSION (A-nouns).

§ 18. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in *ā*; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in *ās*, *ēs*, Masculine, and *ē* Feminine.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Mensā , a table	Mensae , tables, f.
Voc.	Mensā , O table	Mensae , O tables
Acc.	Mensam , a table	Mensās , tables
Gen.	Mensae , of a table	Mensārum , of tables
Dat.	Mensae , to or for a table	Mensīs , to or for tables
Abl.	Mensā , by, with, or from a table	Mensīs , by, with, or from tables

Decline also:

	Singular.			
	<i>Goddess, f.</i>	<i>Son of Theseus, m.</i>	<i>Aeneas, m.</i>	<i>Cybele, f.</i>
Nom.	Dě- ā	Thēsīd- ēs	Aenē- ās	Cýbēl- ē
Voc.	Dě- ā	Thēsīd- ē (ā , ā)	Aenē- ā	Cýbēl- ē
Acc.	Dě- am	Thēsīd- ēn (am)	Aenē- ān (am)	Cýbēl- ēn
Gen.	Dě- ae	Thēsīd- ae	Aenē- ae	Cýbēl- ēs (ae)
Dat.	Dě- ae	Thēsīd- ae	Aenē- ae	Cýbēl- ae
Abl.	Dě- ā	Thēsīd- ē (ā)	Aenē- ā	Cýbēl- ē (ā)
	Plural.			
N. V.	Dě- ae	Thēsīd- ae	(as Mensā,	(as Mensā,
Acc.	Dě- ās	Thēsīd- ās	but rare.)	but rare.)
Gen.	Dě- Ārum	Thēsīd- um		
D. Abl.	Dě- ābūs .	Thēsīd- īs .		

Note.—Masc. Substantives in *ā* are declined like *mensā*: *pōētā*, a poet.

THE SECOND DECLENSION (O-nouns).

§ 19. The Second Declension contains Nouns with Nominative in *ūs*, *ēr*, generally Masculine, and in *um*, Neuter.

	(a) MASCULINE.	
	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Dōmīnūs , a lord	Dōmīnī , lords, m.
Voc.	Dōmīnē , O lord	Dōmīnī , O lords
Acc.	Dōmīnum , a lord	Dōmīnōs , lords
Gen.	Dōmīnī , of a lord	Dōmīnōrum , of lords
Dat.	Dōmīnō , to or for a lord	Dōmīnīs , to, or for lords
Abl.	Dōmīnō , by, with, or from a lord	Dōmīnīs , by, with, or from lords.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Püēr , a boy	Püēri , boys, m.
Voc.	Püēr , O boy	Püēri , O boys
Acc.	Püērum , a boy	Püērōs , boys
Gen.	Püēri , of a boy	Püērōrum , of boys
Dat.	Püērō , to or for a boy	Püēris , to or for boys
Abl.	Püērō , by, with, or from a boy	Püēris , by, with, or from boys.
Nom.	Māgistēr , the master	Māgistri , masters, m.
Voc.	Māgistēr , O master	Māgistri , O masters
Acc.	Māgistrum , the master	Māgistrōs , masters
Gen.	Māgistri , of the master	Māgistrōrum , of masters
Dat.	Māgistrō , to or for the master	Māgistris , to or for masters
Abl.	Māgistrō , by, with, or from the master	Māgistris , by, with, or from masters.

(b) NEUTER.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Bellum , war	Bellā , wars
Voc.	Bellum , O war	Bellā , O wars
Acc.	Bellum , war	Bellā , wars
Gen.	Belli , of war	Bellōrum , of wars
Dat.	Bellō , to or for war	Bellis , to or for wars
Abl.	Bellō , by, with, or from war	Bellis , by, with, or from wars.

Decline also:

	Son, m.	Coin, m.	God, m.	Cloak, n.
Nom.	Fili-ūs	Numm-ūs	Dē-ūs	Palli-um
Voc.	Fil-i	Numm-ē	Dē-ūs	Palli-um
Acc.	Fili-um	Numm-um	Dē-um	Palli-um
Gen.	Fili-i or Fil-i	Numm-i	Dē-i	Palli-i or Palli-
D. Abl.	Fili-ō	Numm-ō	Dē-ō	Palli-ō
	Plural.			
N.V.	Fili-i	Numm-i	Dī (also Dēi)	Palli-ā
Acc.	Fili-ōs	Numm-ōs	Dē-ōs	Palli-ā
Gen.	Fili-ōrum	Numm-ōrum or Numm-um	Dē-ōrum or Dē-um	Palli-ōrum
D. Abl.	Fili-is	Numm-is	Dīs (also Dēis)	Palli-is

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Consonant and I-nouns)

§ 20. The Third Declension has two Divisions :

I. Nouns which have for Character a Consonant.

II. Nouns which have for Character the Half-consonant I.

[Of these Divisions the First is Imparisyllable, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular.

The Second is Parisyllable, having the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

But a few Parisyllable Nouns belong to the Consonant Division ; and many Imparisyllable Nouns to the I-Division.

The Endings of the Nominative Singular are numerous.]

§ 21.

I. CONSONANT-NOUNS.

(a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. V.	Jūdex , a judge, or O judge	Jūdīcēs , judges, or O judges, c.	
Acc.	Jūdīcem , a judge	Jūdīcēs , judges	
Gen.	Jūdīcis , of a judge	JūdīCum , of judges	
Dat.	Jūdīci , to or for a judge	Jūdīcībūs , to or for judges	
Abl.	Jūdīcē , by, with, or from a judge	Jūdīcībūs , by, with, or from judges.	
N. V.	Aetās , an age, or O age	Aetātēs , ages, or O ages, f.	
Acc.	Aetātem , an age	Aetātēs , ages	
Gen.	Aetātīs , of an age	AetāTum , of ages	
Dat.	Aetātī , to or for an age	Aetātībūs , to or for ages	
Abl.	Aetātē , by, with, or from an age	Aetātībūs , by, with, or from ages.	
N. V.	Lēō , a lion, or O lion	Lēōnēs , lions, or O lions, m.	
Acc.	Lēōnem , a lion	Lēōnēs , lions	
Gen.	Lēōnīs , of a lion	LēōNum , of lions	
Dat.	Lēōnī , to or for a lion	Lēōnībūs , to or for lions	
Abl.	Lēōnē , by, with, or from a lion	Lēōnībūs , by, with, or from lions.	
N. V.	Virgō , a virgin, or O virgin	Virgīnēs , virgins, or O virgins, f.	
Acc.	Virgīnem , a virgin	Virgīnēs , virgins	
Gen.	Virgīnīs , of a virgin	VirgīNūm , of virgins	
Dat.	Virgīnī , to or for a virgin	Virgīnībūs , to or for virgins	
Abl.	Virgīnē , by, with, or from a virgin	Virgīnībūs , by, with, or from virgins.	

Decline also :

Singular.

	<i>Law, f.</i>	<i>Foot, m.</i>	<i>Love, m.</i>	<i>Cinder, c.</i>	<i>Father, m.</i>	
N. V.	Lex	Pēs	Āmōr	Cīnīs	Pātr	—
Acc.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	em
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Ānēr-	Pātr-	is
Dat.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	i
Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	ē

Plural.

N. V. A.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	ēs
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	um
D. Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	ībūs

(b) NEUTER.

Singular.

Plural.

N. V.	Nōmēn , name, or <i>O</i> name	Nōmīnā , names, or <i>O</i> names
Acc.	Nōmēn , name	Nōmīnā , names
Gen.	Nōmīnīs , of a name	Nōmīnum , of names
Dat.	Nōmīnī , to or for a name	Nōmīnībūs , to or for names
Abl.	Nōmīnē , by, with, or from a name	Nōmīnībūs , by, with, or from names.

N. V.	Ōpūs , a work, or <i>O</i> work	Ōpērā , works, or <i>O</i> works
Acc.	Ōpūs , a work	Ōpērā , works
Gen.	Ōpērīs , of a work	Ōpērūm , of works
Dat.	Ōpērī , to or for a work	Ōpērībūs , to or for works
Abl.	Ōpērē , by, with, or from a work	Ōpērībūs , by, with, or from works.

Decline also the Neuter Nouns:

Singular.

	<i>Head.</i>	<i>Lightning.</i>	<i>Leg.</i>	<i>Hard wood.</i>	<i>Body.</i>	
N. V. A.	Cāpūt	Fulgūr	Crūs	Rōbūr	Corpūs	—
Gen.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	is
Dat.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	i
Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	ē

Plural.

N. V. A.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	ā
Gen.	Cāpīr-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	um
D. Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	ībūs

§ 22.

II. I-NOUNS.

(a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	Ōvis , a sheep, or O sheep	Ōvēs , sheep, or O sheep, f.
Acc.	Ōvem , a sheep	Ōvēs , or Ōvis ,* sheep
Gen.	Ōvis , of a sheep	Ōvīum , of sheep
Dat.	Ōvi , to or for a sheep	Ōvībūs , to or for sheep
Abl.	Ōvē , by, with, or from a sheep	Ōvībūs , by, with, or from sheep.
N. V.	Nūbēs , a cloud, or O cloud	Nūbēs , clouds, or O clouds, f.
Acc.	Nūbem , a cloud	Nūbēs , or Nūbis ,* clouds
Gen.	Nūbis , of a cloud	Nūbīum , of clouds
Dat.	Nūbi , to or for a cloud	Nūbībūs , to or for clouds
Abl.	Nūbē , by, with, or from a cloud	Nūbībūs , by, with, or from clouds.
N. V.	Dens , a tooth, or O tooth	Dentēs , teeth, or O teeth, m.
Acc.	Dentem , a tooth	Dentēs , or Dentis ,* teeth
Gen.	Dentis , of a tooth	Dentīum ,† of teeth
Dat.	Denti , to or for a tooth	Dentībūs , to or for teeth
Abl.	Dentē , by, with, or from a tooth	Dentībūs , by, with, or from teeth.

Decline also :

Singular.

	<i>Cough</i> , f.	<i>Key</i> , f.	<i>Canal</i> , m.	<i>Shower</i> , m.
N. V.	Tuss-īs	Clāv-īs	Cānāl-īs	Imbrēr
Acc.	Tuss-īm	Clāv-em or im	Cānāl-em	Imbr-em
Gen.	Tuss-īs	Clāv-īs	Cānāl-īs	Imbr-īs
Dat.	Tuss-i	Clāv-i	Cānāl-i	Imbr-i
Abl.	Tuss-i	Clāv-ē or i	Cānāl-i	Imbr-ē or i

Plural.

N. V. A.	Tuss-ēs	Clāv-ēs	Cānāl-ēs	Imbr-ēs *
Gen.	Tuss-īum	Clāv-īum	Cānāl-īum	Imbr-īum
D. Abl.	Tuss-ībūs.	Clāv-ībūs.	Cānāl-ībūs.	Imbr-ībūs.

* The Accus. Plur. of I-nouns, Masc. and Fem., is also spelt with ending *is*, and so appears in most ancient manuscripts, and in many editions of Latin authors.

† I-nouns in -ans -ens, often drop *i* in Gen. Plur.; pārentum for pārentium.

(b) NEUTER.

Singular.

	<i>Bone.</i>	<i>Sea.</i>	<i>Spur.</i>	<i>Animal.</i>
N. V. A.	Ōs	Mārē	Calcār	Ānimāl
Gen.	Ossīs	Mārīs	Calcārīs	Ānimālīs
Dat.	Ossī	Mārī	Calcārī	Ānimālī
Abl.	Ossē	Mārī	Calcārī	Ānimālī

Plural.

N. V. A.	Ossā	Mārīā	Calcārīā	Ānimālīā
Gen.	Ossīum	Mārīum	Calcārīum	Ānimālīum
D. Abl.	Ossībūs.	Mārībūs.	Calcārībūs.	Ānimālībūs.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION (U-nouns).

§ 23. Masculine and Feminine Substantives in the Fourth Declension form the Nominative in **ūs**; Neuter Nouns in **ū**.

Singular.

Plural.

N. V.	Grādūs , a step, or O step	Grādūs , steps, or O steps, in.
Acc.	Grādum , a step	Grādūs , steps
Gen.	Grādūs , of a step	Grādūm , of steps
Dat.	Grādūi , to or for a step	Grādībūs (ūbūs), to or for steps
Abl.	Grādū , by, with, or from a step	Grādībūs (ūbūs), by, with, or from steps.

N. V. A.	Gēnū , a knee, or O knee	Gēnūā , knees, or O knees, n.
Gen.	Gēnūs , of a knee	Gēnūm , of knees
Dat.	Gēnū , to or for a knee	Gēnībūs (ūbūs), to or for knees
Abl.	Gēnū , by, with, or from a knee	Gēnībūs (ūbūs), by, with, or from knees.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION E-nouns).

§ 24. The Fifth Declension contains Feminine Nouns with Nominative in **ēs**. (Concerning **diēs**, see § 31.)

Singular.

Plural.

N. V.	Diēs , a day, or O day	Diēs , days, or O days, c.
Acc.	Diem , a day	Diēs , days
Gen.	Diēi , of a day	Diērum , of days
Dat.	Diēi , to or for a day	Diēbūs , to or for days
Abl.	Diē , by, with, or from a day	Diēbūs , by, with, or from days.

§ 25.

ANOMALIES OF THE NOUN.

- (1) Many Nouns are used in the Singular only:

Argentum, aurum, ferrum, plebs, justitiā,
Vēr, aevum, lētum, sanguis, pūritiā.

Note.—Add āēr, *air* (Acc. S. āērā or āērem), aether, *sky*
(Acc. S. aethērā or aethērem), with many more.

- (2) Many are used in the Plural only:

Mānēs, libērī, Pēnātēs,
Divītiāe, cūnae, nūgae, grātēs,
With armā, mūniā, māgālīā,
And festive seasons, as Flōrālīā.

- (3) Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural:

Castrum, *a fort.*
Castrā, *a camp.*

- (3) Many Nouns are Defective in Case:

Dāpīs, ōpīs, vīs.

- (5) Some Nouns take forms from
- two*
- Declensions:

Laurūs, *bay-tree*, and others.*

- (6) Some vary the Gender:

Jōcūs, *jest*, Pl. jōcī and jōcā;
Lōcūs, *place*, Pl. lōcī and lōcā;
Frēnum, *bit*, Pl. frēnī and frēnā;
Rastrum, *harrow*, Pl. rastri and rastrā.

a. Decline the Defective Nouns:

Singular.

	<i>Feast, f.</i>	<i>Fruit, f.</i>	<i>Help, f.</i>	<i>Prayer, f.</i>	<i>Change, f.</i>	
N. V.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	em
Gen.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	—	Vīc-	is
Dat.	Dāp-	Frūg-	—	Prēc-	—	i
Abl.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	ē

Full Plural, with endings **ēs, um, iūs**, as § 21: except vīc-**ūm**.

S.N. Vīs. *strength, f.* Acc. vim. Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrūm, vīrībūs.

b. Dōmūs, *house, f.*, is like Grādūs; but forms Sing. Dat. -ūi or -ō.
Abl. ō. Plur. Acc. -ūs or -ōs. Gen. ūm or ōrum.
Dōmī, *at home*.

* Laurūs, also cūpressūs, *cypress-tree*, ficūs, *fig-tree*, pīnūs, *pine*, are partly O-nouns, partly U-nouns; having Gen. S., Abl. S., Nom. Pl., Acc. Pl., like dōmīnūs and grādūs.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

§ 26.

GENERAL RULES.

- (1) The Gender of a Latin Noun is shown by Meaning or by Form.
- (2) Males, Months, Winds, and People, are always Masculine, and most Names of Mountains and Rivers.
- (3) Females and Islands are Feminine, and most Names of Countries, Cities, and Trees.
- (4) Nouns indeclinable are Neuter: *fās, nēfās*, and the Verb-noun Infinitive;

Est summum nēfās fallērē,
Deceit is gross impiety.

- (5) Common are to either sex:
Artifex and *ōpifex*,
Convivā, vātēs, advēnā,
Testis, civis, incōlā,
Pārens, sacerdōs, custōs, vindex.
Adūlescens, infans, index,
Jūdex, hērēs, cōmēs, dux,
Princeps, mūniceps, conjux,
Obsēs, ālēs, interprēs,
Auctōr, exūl; and with these
Bōs, dāmā, talpā, tigris, grūs,
*Cānis and anguis, serpens, sūs.**

§ 27.

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the First Declension in *ā, ē*, are Feminine. Substantives in *ās, ēs*, are Masculine.

Exc. Nouns denoting males in *ā*
 Are by meaning Masculine;
 And added to the Males must be
Hādriā, the Hadriatic Sea.

* Many of these words (with others, as *hostis, hospēs, milēs, praesēs, augūr, aurigā*) are rarely found Feminine. A few are rarely Masculine: *as, dāmā, talpā, tigris, grūs, sūs*. Some are equally used in each Gender, when Singular: *as, pārens, conjux, sacerdōs, vātēs cōmēs, dux, cānis*: in Plural generally Masculine.

§ 28. GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Second Declension in *ūs, ēr*, are Masculine. Substantives in *um* are Neuter.

Exc. Fēmīnīnā stand in *ūs*,
 Alvūs, arctūs, carbāsūs,
 Cōlūs, hūmūs, pampīnūs,
 Vannūs; names of Plants, as pīrūs;
 Names of Jewels, as sapphīrūs.
 Neuter, pēlāgūs and vīrūs.
 Vulgūs Neuter commonly,
 Rarely Masculine, we see.

§ 29. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule. I.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine which end in *o, or, os, er*; also Imparisyllables in *es*.

- Exc.* (1) Substantives in *dō* and *gō*
 Gēnūs Fēmīnīnum show.
 But līgō, ordō, praedō, cardō,
 Are Mascūlā; and Common margō.
- (2) Verbal Nouns in *ō* call
 Fēmīnīnā, one and all:
 Mascūlā will only be
 Things that you may touch or see,
 (As curcūliō, vespertīliō,
 Pūgiō, scīpiō, and pāpīliō,) masc - s
 With the Nouns that number show,
 Such as terniō, sēniō.
- (3) Ēchō Fēmīnīnum name:
 Cārō (carnīs) is the same.
- (4) Fēmīnīnum call arbōr;
 Neuter acquōr, marmōr, cōr.
- (5) Of the Substantives in *os*,
 Fēmīnīna cōs and dōs:
 While, of Latin Nouns, alone
 Neuter are ōs (ossīs), bone,
 And ōs (ōrīs), mouth: a few.
 Greek in *ōs* are Neuter too.*
- (6) Many Neuters end in *er*,
 Silēr, ācēr, verbēr, vēr,
 Tūbēr, ūbēr, and cādāvēr,
 Pīpēr, ītēr, and pāpāvēr.

* As mēlōs, melody; ēpōs, epic poem.

- (7) Fēminīnā, compēs, tēgēs,
 Mercēs, mergēs, quīēs, sēgēs,
 Though their Genitives increase
 With the Neuters reckon aēs.

Princ. Rule. II.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Feminine which end in *is, as, aus, x*; or in *s* following another Consonant; also Parisyllables in *es*.

- Exc. (1)* Many Nouns in *is* we find
 To the Mascūlā assigned:
 Amnīs, axīs, caulīs, collīs,
 Clūnīs, crīnīs, fascīs, follīs,
 Fustīs, ignīs, orbīs, ensīs,
 Pānīs, piscīs, postīs, mensīs,
 Torrīs, unguīs, and cānālīs,
 Vcetīs, vermīs, and nātālīs,
 Lāpīs, sanguīs, cūcūmīs,
 Pulvīs, cassēs, Mānēs, glīs.
- (2) Chiefly Mascūlā we view,
 Sometimes Fēminīnā too,
 Callīs, sentīs, fūnīs, finīs,
 Torquīs, and, in poets, cīnīs.
- (3) Mascūlā are ādāmās,
 Elēphās, mās, gīgās, ās:
 Vās (vādīs) too as Male is known,
 Vās (vāsīs) as a Neuter Noun.
- (4) Most are Mascūlā in *ex*:
 Fēminīnā, forfex, lex,
 Nex, sūpellex: Common, pūmex,
 Imbrex, ōbex, sīlex, rūmex.
- (5) Mascūlā appear in *ix*,
 Fornix, phoenix, and cālīx.
- (6) Mascūlā are fons and mons,
 Chālybs, hūdrops, gryps, and pons.
 Rūdēns, torrēns, dēns, and clīēns.
 Fractions of the ās, as triēns;
 Add to Mascūlā trīdēns,
 Occīdēns and ōriēns,
 Bīdēns (*hoe*): but bīdēns (*sheep*).
 With the Fēminīnā keep.
- (7) Mascūlā are found in *ēs*
 Verrēs and ācīnācēs.

Princ. Rule. III.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Neuter which end in *ar, ur, us, Ń, ě, c, l, n, t*.

- Exc.* (1) Mascŭlă are found in *ur*,
Furfŭr, turtŭr, vultŭr, fŭr.
- (2) Fēmīnīnă, some in *ŭs*
Keep *ŭ* long, as, *servitŭs*,
With *jŭventŭs, virtŭs, sālŭs*,
Sēnectŭs, tellŭs, incŭs, pālŭs.
- (3) Also *pēcŭs* (*pēcŭdis*)
Of the Female Gender is.
- (4) Mascŭlă are found in *us*
Lĕpŭs (*lĕpŏris*) and *mŭs*.
- (5) Mascŭlă in *l* are *mŭgŭl*,
Consŭl, sāl and *sŏl*, with *pŭgŭl*.
- (6) Mascŭlă are *rĕn* and *splĕn*,
Pectĕn, delphĭn, attăgĕn.
- (7) Fēmīnīnă some in *ŏn* ;
Gorgŏn, sindŏn, halcyŏn.

§ 30. GENDER IN THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Fourth Declension in *ŭs* are Masculine, in *ŭ* Neuter.

Exc. Fēmīnīnă, trees in *ŭs*,
With *tribŭs, Ńcŭs, porticŭs*,
Dŏmŭs, nŭrŭs, sŏcrŭs, ănŭs,
Idŭs (*idŭm*) and *mănŭs*.*

§ 31. GENDER IN THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine.

Exc. *Dĭēs* in the Singular is Common, in the Plural Masculine.

* See English of Nouns at p. 94



ADJECTIVES.

§ 32. A. Adjectives of THREE ENDINGS, in *ūs, ā, um*, or *ēr, ā, um*, follow the Second and First Declensions.

	Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
like			like mensā		like bellum	
Dōmīnūs .	Bōnūs	bōnā	bōnā	bōnūm	good	
Pūēr . . .	Tēnēr	tēnērā	tēnērā	tēnērūm	tender	
Māgīstēr .	Nīgēr	nīgrā	nīgrā	nīgrūm	black	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bōnūs	bōnā	bōnūm	Bōnī	bōnae	bōnā
Voc.	Bōnē	bōnā	bōnūm	Bōnī	bōnae	bōnā
Acc.	Bōnum	bōnam	bōnum	Bōnōs	bōnās	bōnā
Gen.	Bōnī	bōnae	bōnī	Bōnōrum	bōnārum	bōnōrum
Dat.	Bōnō	bōnae	bōnō	Bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs
Abl.	Bōnō	bōnā	bōnō	Bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. V.	Tēnēr, tēnēr-ā, tēnēr-um	Nīgēr, nīgr-ā, nīgr-um				
Acc.	Tēnēr-um	am	um	Nīgr-um	am	um
Gen.	Tēnēr-ī	ae	ī	Nīgr-ī	ae	ī
Dat.	Tēnēr-ō	ae	ō	Nīgr-ō	ae	ō
Abl.	Tēnēr-ō	ā	ō	Nīgr-ō	ā	ō
N. V.	Tēnēr-ī	ae	ā	Nīgr-ī	ae	ā
Acc.	Tēnēr-ōs	ās	ā	Nīgr-ōs	ās	ā
Gen.	Tēnēr-ōrum	ārum	ōrum	Nīgr-ōrum	ārum	ōrum
D. Abl.	Tēnēr-īs	īs	īs	Nīgr-īs	īs	īs

Decline:

as bōnūs:
cārūs, dear
dūbīūs, doubtful
dūrūs, hard
fēcundūs, fruitful
mālūs, bad
pallidūs, pale.

as tēnēr:
aspēr, rough
lācēr, torn
libēr, free
mīser, wretched
cornīgēr, horned
frūglīfēr, fruitful.*

as nīgēr:
aegēr, sick
ātēr, jet-black
crēbēr, frequent
pulchēr, beautiful
rūbēr, red
sacrēr, sacred.

* And many other Adjectives compounded with the Verbs gērō, fērō. Dextēr, at the right hand, propitiūs, is declined either as tēnēr or nīgēr.

§ 33. B. All other Adjectives follow the Third Declension: *mēlīor*, *better*; *tristīs*, *sad*; *fēlix*, *happy*; *ingens*, *vast*.

Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	Mēlīōr	mēlīūs	Tristīs	tristō
Acc.	Mēlīōrem	mēlīūs	Tristem	tristē
Gen.	Mēlīōrīs		Tristīs	
Dat.	Mēlīōrī		Tristī	
Abl.	Mēlīōrē or ī		Tristī	

Plural.

N. V. A.	Mēlīōrēs	mēlīōrā	Tristēs	tristīā
Gen.	Mēlīōrum		Tristīum	
D. Abl.	Mēlīōrībūs.		Tristībūs.	

Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	Fēlix		Ingens	
Acc.	Fēlicem	fēlix	Ingentem	ingens
Gen.	Fēlicīs		Ingentīs	
Dat.	Fēlicī		Ingentī	
Abl.	Fēlicī*		Ingentī or ē	

Plural.

N. V. A.	Fēlicēs	fēlicīā	Ingentēs	ingentīā
Gen.	Fēlicīum		Ingentīum	
D. Abl.	Fēlicībūs.		Ingentībūs.	

C. Adjectives in *er*, of the Third Declension, have Three Endings in Nom. Sing.: N. *cēlēr*, *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē*, *swift*; N. *ācēr*, *ācērīs*, *ācērē*, *keen*.

Singular.

N. V.	Cēlēr, cēlēr-Is, cēlēr-ē		Ācēr, ācēr-Is, ācēr-ē	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Acc.	Cēlēr-	em	Ācēr-	em
Gen.	Cēlēr-	Is	Ācēr-	Is
D. Abl.	Cēlēr-	ī	Ācēr-	ī

Plural.

N. V. A.	Cēlēr-	ēs	Yā	Ācēr-	ēs	Yā
Gen.	Cēlēr-	Yum		Ācēr-	Yum	
D. Abl.	Cēlēr-	Ybūs		Ācēr-	Ybūs	

Decline:

as *mēlīōr*:
audācīōr, *bolder*
dūrīōr, *harder*.

as *fēlix*:
audax (āc-), *bold*
sērōx (ōc-), *haughty*.

as *cēlēr*:
(none).

as *tristīs*:
brēvīs, *short*
facīlīs, *easy*.

as *ingens*:
āmans, *loving*
sāplens, *wise*.

as *ācēr*:
ālācēr, *brisk*
ēquestēr, *knightly*.

* Rarely *ē*.

§ 34. NUMERAL AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Some Numeral and Pronominal Adjectives form Gen. Sing. in *iūs*, and Dat. Sing. in *ī*: *ūnūs*, *one*; *āliūs*, *other, another*; *altēr*, *one of two, the other*; *ūtēr*, *which of two*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ūnūs	ūnā	ūnum	Ūnī	ūnac	ūnā
Acc.	Ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	Ūnōs	ūnās	ūnā
Gen.	Ūnīūs	ūnīūs	ūnīūs	Ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	Ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	Ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Abl.	Ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	Ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Nom.	Āliūs	āliā	āliūd	Āliī	āliac	āliā
Acc.	Ālium	āliam	āliūd	Āliōs	āliās	āliā
Gen.	Āliūs	āliūs	āliūs	Āliōrum	āliārum	āliōrum
Dat.	Āliī	āliī	āliī	Āliīs	āliīs	āliīs
Abl.	Āliō	āliā	āliō	Āliīs	āliīs	āliīs

Singular.

Nom.	Altēr, altēr-ā, altēr-um			Ūtēr, ūtr-ā, ūtr-um		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Altēr-um	am	um	Ūtr-um	am	um
Gen.	Altēr-īūs	īūs	īūs	Ūtr-īūs	īūs	īūs
Dat.	Altēr-ī	ī	ī	Ūtr-ī	ī	ī
Abl.	Altēr-ō	ā	ō	Ūtr-ō	ā	ō

Plural.

Nom.	Altēr-ī			Ūtr-ī		
	ae	ā		ae	ā	
Acc.	Altēr-ōs	ās	ā	Ūtr-ōs	ās	ā
Gen.	Altēr-ōrum	ārum	ōrum	Ūtr-ōrum	ārum	ōrum
D. Abl.	Altēr-īs	īs	īs	Ūtr-īs	īs	īs

Decline like *ūnūs*: *ullūs*, *any at all*; *nullūs*, *none, no*; *sōlūs*, *alone*; *tōtūs*, *whole*.

Like *ūtēr*: *neutēr*, *neither*; *ūterquē*, *each (of two)*; *ūtēvis*, *ūterlibēt*, *which you will*; *ūtercumquē*, *whichever of the two*. The suffixes *-quē*, *-vis*, *-libēt*, *-cumquē*, are appended to each case-form: *ūtriusquē*, *ūtrivīs*, *utrōlibēt*, *ūtrumcumquē*. *Altērūtēr*, *one or the other*, is usually declined as *ūtēr*. But Gen. *altērīūs-ūtērīūs* is found.

Dŭō, <i>two</i> .			Trēs, <i>three</i> .		
Plural.			Plural.		
	M.	F.		M. F.	N.
Nom.	Dŭō	dŭae	dŭō	Trēs	trīā
Acc.	Dŭōs or dŭō	dŭās	dŭō	Trīs	trīā
Gen.	Dŭōrum	dŭārum	dŭōrum	Trīum	trīum
D. Abl.	Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs.	Trībŭs	trībŭs.

Decline as dŭō: ambō, *both*.

The other Cardinal Numbers (*quattuor, four; quinque, five; sex, six; septem, seven; octo, eight; novem, nine; decem, ten, &c., to centum, a hundred*) are undeclined. *Millē, a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective. The Neuter Plural, *millā, thousands*, is a Substantive, and declined like *Māriā*. (See Table of Numerals, p. 129.)

COMPARISON.

§ 35. The ADJECTIVE has THREE DEGREES of Comparison; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i>	dŭrīōr, <i>harder</i>	dŭrīssimŭs, <i>hardest</i> .

The Comparative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *īōr*.

The Superlative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimŭs*:

Positive.	Gen.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i>	dŭr-ī	dŭr-Yōr	dŭr-issimŭs
Brēvis, <i>short</i>	„ brēv-īs	brēv-Yōr	brēv-issimŭs
Audāx, <i>bold</i>	„ audāc-īs	audāc-Yōr	audāc-issimŭs.

(1) Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rīmŭs* to the Nominative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-Yōr	pulcher-rīmŭs
Cēlēr, <i>swift</i>	cēlēr-Yōr	cēler-rīmŭs.

Vētŭs, *ancient*, forms Superl. vēter-rīmŭs.

(2) The following form the Superlative by changing *is* into *īmŭs*:

Fācilis, <i>easy</i>	Sīmīlis, <i>like</i>	Grācilis, <i>slender</i>
Diffīcilis, <i>difficult</i>	Dissīmilis, <i>unlike</i>	Hūmilis, <i>lowly</i> .

Superl. fācil-īmŭs, sīmīl-īmŭs, grācil-īmŭs, hūmil-īmŭs, &c

§ 36.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bōnūs, <i>good</i>	mēliōr	optimūs.
Mālūs, <i>bad</i>	pējōr	pessimūs.
Magnūs, <i>great</i>	mājōr	maximūs.
Parvūs, <i>small</i>	minōr	minimūs.
Multūs, <i>much</i>	(plūs, Neut.)	plūrimūs.
Nēquam, <i>worthless</i>	nēquiōr	nēquissimūs.

Note 1. The Comparative of multūs has no Masc. or Fem. Singular; but full Plural: Nom. Acc. plūrēs, plūrā, Gen. plūrium, D. Abl. plūribūs.

Note 2. Divēs, *rich*, often contracts divit- into dit-: Comp. divitiōr or ditior, Superl. divitissimūs or ditissimūs.

Note 3. Sēnex, *old* (generally an old man), has Comp. sēnior. Jūvenis, *young* (a youth, Fem. not used), has Comp. jūnior, Masc. or Fem. But older is often nātū mājōr, or mājōr only; *eldest*, nātū maximūs, or max. mūs; *younger*, nātū minōr, or minōr; *youngest*, nātū minimūs, minimūs.

Note 4. Adjectives of Position spring from Prepositions:—

Preposition.	Positive Adj.	Comparative.	Superlative.
E, ex, <i>out of</i>	extēriūs, <i>outside</i>	extēriōr	extremūs (extimūs)
Intrā, <i>within</i>	—	intēriōr	intimūs
Sūpēr, <i>above</i>	sūpēriūs, <i>high above</i>	sūpēriōr	sūprēmūs (summūs)
Infērā, <i>below</i>	infērūs, <i>deep below</i>	infērōr	infimūs (imūs)
Prae, <i>before</i>	—	prīōr	primūs, <i>first</i>
Post, <i>after</i>	postēriūs, <i>next after</i>	postēriōr	postrēmūs (postūmūs)
Citra, <i>on near side</i>	—	citēriōr	citimūs
Ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	—	ultēriōr	ulcimūs, <i>last</i>
Prōpē, <i>near</i>	—	prōpiōr	proximūs
Dē, <i>down from</i>	—	dētēriōr, <i>worse</i>	dētērrimūs, <i>worst</i>

Obs. Adjectives in -ūs after a vowel use in Comparison māgis, maximē; dūbils, *doubtful*, māgis dūbils, maximē dūbils.

Adjectives in -diciūs, -ficiūs, -viciūs change ūs into -entiōr, entissimūs; magnificiūs, magnificentiōr, magnificētissimūs.

Ōclōr, *neither*, ōclōsimūs, has no Positive.

Many Adjectives have Positive only; some Comparative without Superlative, many Superlative without Comparative.

§ 37. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives imitate their Comparison, with endings, Comparative ūs, Superlative ē.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adj.	Dignūs, <i>worthy</i>	dignīōr	dignissimūs.
Adv.	Dignē, <i>worthily</i>	dignīūs	dignissimē.
Adj.	Grāvīs, <i>weighty</i>	grāviōr	grāvissimūs.
Adv.	Grāvitēr, <i>weightily</i>	grāviūs	grāvissimē.
a. So :	Saepe, <i>often</i>	saepiūs	saepissimē.
	Diū, <i>long</i>	diūtiūs	diūtissimē.
But :	Multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum.
	Magnōpērē, <i>greatly</i>	māgis, <i>more</i>	maximē.

PRONOUNS.

§ 38. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns are purely Substantives; the rest are generally Adjectives, but are often used Substantively.

(1) PERSONAL.

1. FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Ėgō , <i>I</i>	Nōs , <i>we</i>
Acc.	Mē , <i>me</i>	Nōs , <i>us</i>
Gen.	Mėi , <i>of me</i>	Nostrī , or Nostrum , <i>of us</i>
Dat.	Mīnī , <i>to or for me</i>	Nōbīs , <i>to or for us</i>
Abl.	Mē , <i>(with) me</i>	Nōbīs , <i>(with) us</i> .

2. SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	Tū , <i>thou</i>	Vōs , <i>ye</i>
Acc.	Tē , <i>thee</i>	Vōs , <i>you</i>
Gen.	Tūī , <i>of thee</i>	Vestri , or Vestrum , <i>of you</i>
Dat.	Tībī , <i>to or for thee</i>	Vōbīs , <i>to or for you</i>
Abl.	Tē , <i>(with) thee</i>	Vōbīs , <i>(with) you</i> .

(2) REFLEXIVE (THIRD PERSON).

Singular and Plural.

Nom.	(wanting.)
Acc.	Sē (sēsē), <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Gen.	Sūī , <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Dat.	Sībī , <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Abl.	Sē (sēsē), <i>(with) himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>

(3) POSSESSIVE.

As Bōnūs, decline :

Mėūs, mėā, mėum, *my, mine*.

Tūūs, tūā, tūum, *thy, thine*.

Sūūs, sūā, sūum, *his, her, its, their own*.

Cūjūs, cūjā, cūjum, *whose; whose?*

As Nīgēr:

Nostēr, nostrā, nostrum, *our*.

Vestēr, vestrā, vestrum, *your*.

Note. Mėūs has Vocative Masculine mī. Tūūs, sūūs, have none

(4) DEMONSTRATIVE.

1. SIMPLE OR UNEMPHATIC.

Īs, that (or he, she, it).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Īs	ěā	Īd	Īi (ĪI)	ěae	ěā
Acc.	Ēum	ěam	Īd	Ēōs	ěās	ěā
Gen.	Ējūs	ějūs	ějūs	Ēōrum	ěārum	ěōrum
Dat.	Ēī	ěī	ěī	Īis or Ēis		
Abl.	Ēō	ěā	ěō	Īis or Ēis		

2. EMPHATIC.

Hīc, this (near me).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Hīc	haec	hōc	Hī	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hōs	hās	haec
Gen.	Hūjūs	hūjūs	hūjūs	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic	Hīs	hīs	hīs
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Hīs	hīs	hīs

Illē, that (yonder).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Illē	illā	illū	Illī	illae	illā
Acc.	Illum	illam	illū	Illōs	illās	illā
Gen.	Illūs	illūs	illūs	Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illī	illī	illī	Illīs	illīs	illīs
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs	illīs	illīs

Istē, that (near you), is declined like Illē.

(5) DEFINITIVE. (Īdem, same; ipsē, self.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Īdem	ěādem	Īdem	Īdem*	ěaedem	ěādem
Acc.	Ēndem	ěandem	Īdem	Ēōdem	ěasdem	ěādem
Gen.	Ējusdem	ějusdem	Ējusdem	Ēōrundem	ěārundem	ěōrundem
Dat.	Ēidem	ěidem	Ēidem	Īsdem or Ēisdem*		
Abl.	Ēōdem	ěādem	Ēōdem	Īsdem or Ēisdem.*		

Ipsē is declined like Illē, but with Neuter Singular N. Acc. *ipsum*.
It forms a Superlative *ipsissimūs*, *very self*.

* Poets write Nom. Plur. masc. *Idem*, Dat. Abl. *Idem*



(6) RELATIVE. (*Qui, who, or which.*)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Qui	quae	quod	Qui	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quod	Quos	quas	quae
Gen.	Cujus	cujus	cujus	Quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui	Quibus or quis		
Abl.	Quo	quā	quō	Quibus or quis.		

(7) INTERROGATIVE.

	Singular.			
Nom.	Quis	(quis)	quid	} * <i>who, or what?</i>
	Qui	quae	quod	
Acc.	Quem	quam	quid	
	Quem	quam	quod	
	&c.	&c.	&c.	

(8) INDEFINITE.

	Singular.			
	Quis	quā	quid	} * <i>any one.</i>
	Qui	quae	quod	
	Quem	quam	quid	
	Quem	quam	quod	
	&c.	&c.	&c.	

In the other forms as Relative.

In the other forms as Relative.

Indefinite Pl. Nom. *Qui, quae, quā or quae.*

(9) COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

1. *Quisnam, quidnam; quīnam, quāenam, quodnam, who, what?*
2. *Ecquis (for en-quis), ecquā, ecquid? Ecqui, ecquae, ecquod, anyone? (Interrogative). So Numquis, siquis, &c.*
3. *Ālīquis, ālīquā, ālīquid; Ālīqui, ālīquā, ālīquod, some one.*
4. *Quispiam, quaequam, quippiam (quodpiam), anyone.*
5. *Quisquam, quicquam; Genitive, cūjusquam, &c., anyone at all.*
6. *Quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), a certain one.*
7. *Quicumquē, quaecumquē, quodcumquē, whosoever, whatsoever.*
8. *Quisquīs, whosoever, quidquid, whatsoever.*
9. *Quivīs, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), any you will.*
10. *Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quodlibet), any you please.*
11. *Quisque, quaeque, quicque; Quisque, quaeque, quodque, each. So Unusquisque, unaqueque, unumquicque (-quodque), each one.*

a. These Compounds are declined as their Primitives, the undeclined suffix or prefix accompanying each case, as Gen. *cūjusnam, ālīcūjus, cūjuscumquē, &c., &c.*
On Correlatives, see p. 126.

THE PRONOMINAL CORRELATIVES *QUALIS, &c.*

Interrog.	Demonst.	Relat.	Indefinite.	Univ.
Qualis, of what kind?	tālis, such	quālis, as		quālisumquē, of what kind soever.
Quantus, how great?	tantus, so great	quantus, as	āliquantus, of some size	quantusumquē, how great soever.
Quot, how many?	tōt, so many	quōt, as	āliquōt, some few	quotecumquē, how many soever.

* The forms *Quis, quid*, are Substantival; *Qui, quod*, Adjectival.

VERBS.

§ 39. The Verb has two VOICES. (1) the ACTIVE VOICE; *ămō, I love*: (2) the PASSIVE; *ămör, I am loved*.

§ 40. A DEPONENT Verb is chiefly Passive in form, but Active in sense; *hortör, I exhort*.

§ 41. Active and Deponent Verbs are either—

- (1) TRANSITIVE, acting on an object: *ămō ěum, I love him*: or
- (2) INTRANSITIVE, not acting on an object: *stō, I stand*.

Obs. Verbs Intransitive have no personal Passive: see § 76.

§ 42. The Verb has two parts:

I. FINITE. II. INFINITE.

I. The VERB FINITE has three MOODS.

- (1) The INDICATIVE; *ămō, I love*.
- (2) The CONJUNCTIVE; *ămem* (variously rendered: see § 66).
- (3) The IMPERATIVE; *ămā, love thou*.

§ 43. Time is expressed by TENSES.

There are six Tense-forms of the Verb Finite: the Present, Simple-Future, Imperfect, Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect. Other Tenses are formed by the verb *Sum, essē (to be)*, with Participles.

§ 44. Tenses have each (1) two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural; and (2) three PERSONS in each Number.

The First Person speaks: *ămō, I love*; *ămāmūs, we love*.

The Second Person is spoken to: *ămās, thou lovest*; *ămātīs, ye love*.

The Third Person is spoken of: *ămāt, he loves*; *ămant, they love*.

Obs. The Pronouns, *ĕgō, nōs, tū, vōs, Is, Il*, are severally implied in the Personal Endings.

§ 45. II. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verb-nouns.

- (1) The INFINITIVE, having several Tense-forms.
- (2) The GERUND, } Verbal Substantives, which supply Case
- (3) The two SUPINES, } to the Infinitive.
- (4) PARTICIPLES, or Verbal Adjectives, one of which ends in *dūs*, and is called GERUNDIVE.

§ 46. There are Four regular CONJUGATIONS (three of Vowel Verbs, one of Consonant and U-verbs), of which the PRESENT-STEM and CHARACTER are shown in the Imperative or Infinitive.

ACTIVE VERBS.

		Ind. Pres.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	
1st CONJ.	A -verbs	Āmō	āmā	āmā-rē	<i>love</i>
2nd CONJ.	E -verbs	Mōnēō	mōnē	mōnē-rē	<i>advise</i>
3rd CONJ.	Cons. -verbs	Rēgō	rēg-ē	rēg-ērē	<i>rule</i>
	U -verbs	Indūō	indū-ē	indū-ērē	<i>put on</i>
4th CONJ.	I -verbs	Audiō	audi	audi-rē	<i>hear.</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

1st CONJ.	A -verbs	Vēnōr	vēnā-rē	vēnā-rī	<i>hunt</i>
2nd CONJ.	E -verbs	Vērōr	vērē-rē	vērē-rī	<i>fear</i>
3rd CONJ.	Cons. -verbs	Ūtōr	ūt-ērē	ūt-ī	<i>use</i>
4th CONJ.	I -verbs	Partiōr	partī-rē	partī-rī	<i>divide.</i>

§ 47. The PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE-STEMS must be known in order to conjugate a Verb :

ACTIVE VERBS.			DEPONENT VERBS.	
Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Sup. Stem.	Pres. Stem.	Sup. Stem.
1. Ām A -	āmā V -	āmā T -	Vēn A -	vēnā T -
2. Mōn E -	mōn U -	mōnī T -	Vēr E -	vērī T -
3. Rēg Cons. -	rex- (reg S -)	rec T -	Ū T -	ūs-
4. Aud I -	audi V -	audi T -	Part I -	parti T -

From these the other parts of the Verb may be formed.

DERIVATION OF THE VERB-FORMS.

From PRESENT Stem.	From PERFECT Stem.	From SUPINE Stem.
Present Act. and Pass.	Perfect Act.	Supines
Future Simple A. and P.	Future Perfect Act.	Participle Fut. Act.
Imperf. Act. and Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Infinitive Fut. Pass.
Imperat. Act. and Pass.	Infinitive Perfect Act.	Participle Perf. Pass.
Inf. Pres. Act. and Pass.		Perfect Pass.
Gerund and Gerundive		Future Perf. Pass.
Participle Pres. Act.		Pluperfect Pass.
		Infinitive Perf. Pass.

a. A Verb, therefore, is sufficiently conjugated thus :

SHORT FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Audīō
Infin. Pres.	āmā-rē	mōnē-rē	rēg-ērē	audi-rē
Perfect	āmāv-ī	mōnū-ī	rex-ī	audi-v-ī
Supine in <i>um</i>	āmāt-um.	mōnīt-um.	rect-um.	audit-um.

SHORT FORM FOR DEPONENT OR PASSIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmōr	Mōnēōr	Rēgōr	Audīōr
Infin. Pres.	āmā-rī	mōnē-rī	rēg-ī	audi-rī
Partic. Perf.	āmāt-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	rect-ūs	audit-ūs
Gerundive	amandūs.	mōnendūs.	rēgendūs.	audiendūs.

b. Or, as a useful exercise, the following parts may often be repeated :

LONGER FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Audīō
2 Pers. Pres.	āmās	mōnēs	rēgis	audis
Infin. Pres.	āmā-rē	mōnē-rē	rēg-ērē	audi-rē
Perfect	āmāvī	mōnūī	rexī	audi-vī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	amandum	mōnendum	rēgendum*	audiendum
„ <i>dī</i>	amandī	mōnendī	rēgendī	audiendī
„ <i>dō</i>	amandō	mōnendō	rēgendō	audiendō
Sup. in <i>um</i>	āmātum	mōnitum	rectum	auditum
„ <i>u</i>	āmātū	mōnītū	rectū	auditū
Part. Pres.	āmans	mōnens	rēgens	audiens
„ Fut.	āmātūrūs.	mōnītūrūs.	rectūrūs.	auditūrūs.

LONGER FORM FOR DEPONENT VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Vēnōr	Vērēōr	Ūtōr	Partiōr
2 Pers. Pres.	vēnāris	vērēris	ūtēris	partiris
Infin. Pres.	vēnārī	vērērī	ūtī	partiri
Perfect	vēnātūs sum	vērītūs sum	ūsūs sum	partitūs sum
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	vēnandum	vērendum	ūtendum	partiendum
„ <i>dī</i>	vēnandī	vērēndī	ūtēndī	partiendī
„ <i>dō</i>	vēnandō	vērēndō	ūtēndō	partiendō
Gerundive	vēnandūs	vērēndūs	ūtēndūs	partiendūs
Snp. in <i>um</i>	vēnātum	vērītum	ūsūm	partitum
„ <i>u</i>	vēnātū	vērītū	ūsū	partitū
Part. Pres.	vēnans	vērēns	ūtens	partiēns
„ Perf.	vēnātūs	vērītūs	ūsūs	partitūs
„ Fut.	vēnātūrūs.	vērītūrūs.	ūsūrūs.	partitūrūs.

* The forms *-undum -undūs* are sometimes used in the 3rd and 4th Conjugations. Intransitive Verbs form no Gerundive Adjective, and no Supine in *u*.

§ 48. Action and State occur in Time. Time is either simply Present, Past, or Future; or it is Present, Past, or Future with some further relation. The subjoined Scheme (for the Active Voice and Indicative Mood) compares the expression of the relations of Time in Latin and English.

	Time.	Indic.	English.	Name of Tense.
Present.	{ Simple	āmō	<i>I love</i>	Present.
	{ Pres. Relation	āmō	<i>am loving</i>	
	{ Past Relation	āmāvi	<i>have loved</i>	
	{ Fut. Relation	āmātūrū sum	<i>am about to love</i>	
Past.	{ Simple	āmāvi	<i>loved</i>	Fütürum Pērīphras-ticum Praesentis. Perfect. Imperfect. Pluperfect. Fütürum Pērīphras-ticum Praetēriti. Future Simplo.
	{ Pres. Relation	āmābam	<i>was loving</i>	
	{ Past Relation	āmāveram	<i>had loved</i>	
	{ Fut. Relation	āmātūrū fūi.	<i>was about to love</i>	
Future.	{ Simple	āmābō	<i>shall love</i>	Future Perfect. Fütürum Pērīphras-ticum Fütūri.
	{ Pres. Relation	āmābō	<i>shall be loving</i>	
	{ Past Relation	āmāverō	<i>shall have loved</i>	
	{ Fut. Relation	āmātūrū ērō	<i>shall be about to love</i>	

Note 1. The Present, the Futures, and the Present Past (āmāvi, *I have loved*) are called Primary Tenses: the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Simple Perfect (āmāvi, *I loved*) Historic Tenses.

Note 2. A. The Perfect is formed in several ways:—

1. By adding **vi** to the Stem: āmāvi, flevi.
 2. By adding **ūi** (for **vi**) to the Stem or Clipt Stem: * cōlūi, mōnūi.
 3. By adding **si** to the Stem or Clipt Stem: carpsi, mansi.
- In this formation Consonants are generally changed (see § 81).
4. By prefixing a Reduplication, and adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem. This Reduplication is either the first Consonant and Vowel of the Stem: cūcurri, mōmordi; or the first Consonant with **ē**, in which case the Stem-vowel is usually changed: cēcīni (from cānō); see § 81; § 111 (9).
 5. By adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem, with or without change of the Stem-vowel: bibi, verti, ēgi (from āgō), fāvi (from fāvēō).

B. The Supine is formed:—

1. By adding to the Stem or Clipt Stem **tum**, sometimes **i-tum**, and a change of letters often takes place: āmātum, cultum, rectum, mōn-i-tum.
2. The change of letters often requires **tum** to become **sum**. See § 81.

Note 3. The learner should bear in mind that the English given in the following Tables for the Tenses of Verbs is often only one of several possible meanings; especially in the Conjunctive Mood.

§ 49. Before the regular Verbs, it is necessary to conjugate the irregular but important Verb of Being, sum, esse, which helps to complete the conjugation of other Verbs.

* A Clipt Stem is a Stem without its Vowel Character: mon- for mone-.

§ 50. FORMATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB SUM, *I am* (Sum, fūi, eſſē, fūtūrūſ).

VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPFRATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. Sum, <i>I am</i> <i>ēs, thou art</i> <i>eſt, he is</i> Pl. ſumūſ, <i>we are</i> <i>eſtīſ, ye are</i> <i>sunt, they are.</i>	sim, <i>I may</i> <i>sīs, thou mayſt</i> <i>sīt, he may</i> simūſ, <i>we may</i> <i>sītīſ, ye may</i> <i>sint, they may</i>	ēs, <i>be thou</i> eſtē, <i>be ye.</i>
	S. ērō, <i>I shall</i> <i>ērīſ, thou wilt</i> <i>ērīt, he will</i> Pl. ērimūſ, <i>we shall</i> <i>ērītīſ, ye will</i> <i>erunt, they will</i>	essē v. fōrēs, <i>I might</i> <i>essēt v. fōrēt, thou mightſt</i> <i>essēm v. fōrēmūſ, we might</i> <i>essētīſ v. fōrētīſ, ye might</i> <i>essent v. fōrent, they might</i>	estō, <i>thou must be</i> <i>estō, he must be</i> <i>estōtē, ye must be</i> <i>suntō, they must be.</i>
Imperfect.	S. eram, <i>I was</i> <i>erās, thou wast</i> <i>erāt, he was</i> Pl. ēramūſ, <i>we were</i> <i>erātīſ, ye were</i> <i>erant, they were.</i>	essēm v. fōrēm, <i>I might</i> <i>essēs v. fōrēs, thou mightſt</i> <i>essēt v. fōrēt, he might</i> <i>essēmūſ v. fōrēmūſ, we might</i> <i>essētīſ v. fōrētīſ, ye might</i> <i>essent v. fōrent, they might</i>	be.

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Present and Imperfect.
essē, to be.

Infinitive Perfect and Pluperfect.
fuisse, to have been.

Infinitive Future.
fore v. futūrus essē, to be about to be.

Gerunds.

None.

Supines.

None.

Participle Present.

None.

Participle Future.

futūrus, about to be.

Futūrus may be conjugated with
all the tenses of sum: see § 64.

fui
S. fui, I was *
fuisti, thou wast
fuit, he was
Pl. fuimūs, we were
fuistis, ye were
fuerunt vel fuerē, they
were

fuero
S. fuero, I shall
fueris, thou wilt
fuert, he will
Pl. fuerimūs, we shall
fueritis, ye will
fuerint, they will

fuisset
S. fuisset, I should
fuisses, thou wouldst
fuisset, he would
Pl. fuissēmūs, we should
fuissetis, ye would
fuissent, they would

fuisse
S. fuisse, I have been
fuisses, thou wast
fuit, he was
Pl. fuissēmūs, we have been
fuissetis, ye have been
fuissent, they have been

fuisse
S. fuisse, I shall
fuisses, thou wilt
fuert, he will
Pl. fuerimūs, we shall
fueritis, ye will
fuerint, they will

fuisse
S. fuisse, I had
fuisses, thou hadst
fuisset, he had
Pl. fuissēmūs, we had
fuissetis, ye had
fuissent, they had

Like Sum decline its compounds absūm, adsum, desūm, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, prōsum, subsum, sūpsum. Prōsum takes d before e, as, Prōsum, prōdest, prōdesm, prōdestis, prōdesm, prōdesm. Absum has Pres. Part. absens; praesum, praesens. Possum will be noticed hereafter.

* Or. fui. &c. I have been, thou hast been, he has been, we, ye, they (have been).

§ 51.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S. <i>Āmō, I love</i> <i>āmās, thou lovest</i> <i>āmāt, he loves</i> Pl. <i>āmāmūs, we love</i> <i>āmātīs, ye love</i> <i>āmānt, they love.</i>	1. <i>Āmō, I shall</i> <i>āmābīs, thou wilt</i> <i>āmābīt, he will</i> Pl. <i>āmābīmūs, we shall</i> <i>āmābītīs, ye will</i> <i>āmābunt, they will</i>	4. <i>āmēm, I may</i> <i>āmēs, thou mayst</i> <i>āmēt, he may</i> <i>āmēmūs, we may</i> <i>āmētīs, ye may</i> <i>āmēnt, they may</i>	6. <i>āmā, love thou</i> <i>āmātē, love ye.</i>
Future Simple.	3. <i>āmābō, I shall</i> <i>āmābīs, thou wilt</i> <i>āmābīt, he will</i> Pl. <i>āmābīmūs, we shall</i> <i>āmābītīs, ye will</i> <i>āmābunt, they will</i>	5. <i>āmārem, I might</i> <i>āmārēs, thou mightst</i> <i>āmārēt, he might</i> <i>āmārēmūs, we might</i> <i>āmārētīs, ye might</i> <i>āmārent, they might</i>	must love. <i>āmātō, thou</i> <i>āmātō, he</i> <i>āmātōtē, ye</i> <i>āmāntō, they</i>
Imperfect.	2. <i>āmābam, I was</i> <i>āmābās, thou wast</i> <i>āmābāt, he was</i> Pl. <i>āmābāmūs, we were</i> <i>āmābātīs, ye were</i> <i>āmābant, they were</i>	5. <i>āmārem, I might</i> <i>āmārēs, thou mightst</i> <i>āmārēt, he might</i> <i>āmārēmūs, we might</i> <i>āmārētīs, ye might</i> <i>āmārent, they might</i>	

Perfect.	S. <i>āmāvē, I loved*</i> <i>āmāvēstī, thou lovedst</i> <i>āmāvēt, he loved</i> Pl. <i>āmāvēmūs, we loved</i> <i>āmāvēstīs, ye loved</i> <i>āmāv-ērunt v. āmāv-ērē,</i> <i>they loved.</i>	<i>āmāvērim, I may</i> <i>āmāvērīs, thou mayst</i> <i>āmāvērit, he may</i> <i>āmāvērimūs, we may</i> <i>āmāvēritīs, ye may</i> <i>āmāvērint, they may</i> <i>have loved.</i> 4-	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>āmārē, to love.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>āmāvēssē, to have loved.</i> Inf. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrūs essē, to be about to love.</i> Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>āmandum, loving.</i> Ger. Gen. . . <i>āmandī, of loving.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>āmandō, for or by loving.</i> Sup. in um. . <i>āmātum, to love.</i> Sup. in u. . . <i>āmātū, in loving, or to be loved.</i> Part. Pres. <i>āmāns, loving.</i> Part. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrūs, about to love.</i>
Future Perfect.	S. <i>āmāvērō, I shall</i> <i>āmāvērīs, thou wilt</i> <i>āmāvērit, he will</i> Pl. <i>āmāvērimūs, we shall</i> <i>āmāvēritīs, ye will</i> <i>āmāvērint, they will</i> <i>have loved.</i>		
Pluperfect.	S. <i>āmāvēram, I had</i> <i>āmāvērās, thou hadst</i> <i>āmāvērāt, he had</i> Pl. <i>āmāvērāmūs, we had</i> <i>āmāvērātīs, ye had</i> <i>āmāvērant, they had</i> <i>loved.</i>	<i>āmāvissem, I should</i> <i>āmāvisseš, thou wouldst</i> <i>āmāvisset, he would</i> <i>āmāvissemūs, we should</i> <i>āmāvissetīs, ye would</i> <i>āmāvissent, they would</i> <i>have loved.</i> 5-	

* Or, *āmāvē, &c., I have loved, thou hast loved, he has loved, we, ye, they (have loved).*

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. mōnēbō, <i>I shall</i> mōnēbīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnēbīt, <i>he will</i> <i>advise.</i> Pl. mōnēbīmūs, <i>we shall</i> mōnēbītis, <i>ye will</i> mōnēbunt, <i>they will</i>		mōnētō, <i>thou</i> mōnētō, <i>he</i> mōnētōtē, <i>ye</i> mōnentō, <i>they</i> <i>must advise.</i>
	S. mōnēbam, <i>I was</i> mōnēbās, <i>thou wast</i> mōnēbāt, <i>he was</i> <i>advising.</i> Pl. mōnēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> mōnēbātis, <i>ye were</i> mōnēbant, <i>they were</i>	mōnērem, <i>I might</i> mōnērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> mōnērēt, <i>he might</i> mōnērēmūs, <i>we might</i> mōnērētis, <i>ye might</i> mōnerent, <i>they might</i> <i>advise.</i>	

S. mōnū, <i>I advised</i> * mōnūistī, <i>thou advisedst</i> mōnūt, <i>he advised</i> Pl. mōnūimūs, <i>we advised</i> mōnūistis, <i>ye advised</i> mōnū-ērunt v. mōnū-ērē, <i>they advised.</i>	mōnūērim, <i>I may</i> mōnūērīs, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnūērīt, <i>he may</i> mōnūērīmūs, <i>we may</i> mōnūērītis, <i>ye may</i> mōnūērint, <i>they may</i> <i>have</i> <i>advised.</i>	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērē, <i>to advise.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnūissē, <i>to have</i> <i>advised.</i> Inf. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs essē, <i>to be</i> <i>about to advise.</i> Ger. Nom. Ac. mōnendum, <i>advising.</i> Ger. Gen. . . mōnendī, <i>of advising.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. mōnendō, <i>for or by</i> <i>advising.</i> Sup. in um . mōnītum, <i>to advise.</i> Sup. in u . . mōnītū, <i>in advising</i> <i>or to be advised.</i> Part. Pres. . . mōnēns, <i>advising.</i> Part. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs, <i>about to</i> <i>advise.</i>	
S. mōnūērō, <i>I shall</i> mōnūērīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnūērīt, <i>he will</i> Pl. mōnūērīmūs, <i>we shall</i> mōnūērītis, <i>ye will</i> mōnūērint, <i>they will</i>	mōnūissēs, <i>I should</i> mōnūissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> mōnūissēt, <i>he would</i> mōnūissēmūs, <i>we should</i> mōnūissētis, <i>ye would</i> mōnūissent, <i>they would</i> <i>have</i> <i>advised.</i>		
S. mōnūēram, <i>I had</i> mōnūērās, <i>thou hadst</i> mōnūērāt, <i>he had</i> Pl. mōnūērīmūs, <i>we had</i> mōnūērātis, <i>ye had</i> mōnūērant, <i>they had</i>	<i>advised.</i>		

* Or, mōnū, &c., *I have advised. thou hast advised, he has advised, we, ye, they (have advised).*

§ 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. <i>rĕgō, I rule</i> <i>rĕgīs, thou rulest</i> <i>rĕgīt, he rules</i> Pl. <i>rĕgimūs, we rule</i> <i>rĕgītis, ye rule</i> <i>rĕgunt, they rule.</i>	<i>rĕgam, I may</i> <i>rĕgās, thou mayst</i> <i>rĕgāt, he may</i> <i>rĕgāmūs, we may</i> <i>rĕgātīs, ye may</i> <i>rĕgant, they may</i>	<i>rĕgē, rule thou *</i> <i>rĕgītē, rule ye.</i>
	S. <i>rĕgam, I shall</i> <i>rĕgēs, thou wilt</i> <i>rĕgēt, he will</i> Pl. <i>rĕgēmūs, we shall</i> <i>rĕgētīs, ye will</i> <i>rĕgent, they will</i>		
Imperfect.	S. <i>rĕgēbam, I was</i> <i>rĕgēbās, thou wast</i> <i>rĕgēbāt, he was</i> Pl. <i>rĕgēbāmūs, we were</i> <i>rĕgēbātīs, ye were</i> <i>rĕgēbant, they were.</i>	<i>rĕgērem, I might</i> <i>rĕgērēs, thou mightst</i> <i>rĕgērēt, he might</i> <i>rĕgērēmūs, we might</i> <i>rĕgērētīs, ye might</i> <i>rĕgērent, they might</i>	<i>rĕgītō, thou</i> <i>rĕgītō, he</i> <i>rĕgītōtē, ye</i> <i>rĕguntō, they</i> <i>must rule.</i>

Perfect.	S. <i>rēxī, I ruled†</i> <i>rēxistī, thou ruledst</i> <i>rēxist, he ruled</i> Pl. <i>rēximūs, we ruled</i> <i>rēxistis, ye ruled</i> <i>rēx-erunt vėl rēx-erē, they ruled.</i>	[ruled.] <i>rēx-erunt vėl rēx-erē, they</i>	S. <i>rēxērō, I shall</i> <i>rēxērīs, thou wilt</i> <i>rēxērīt, he will</i> Pl. <i>rēxērīmūs, we shall</i> <i>rēxērītis, ye will</i> <i>rēxērīnt, they will</i>	[have ruled.] <i>rēxērīt, he will</i>	S. <i>rēxeram, I had</i> <i>rēxērās, thou hadst</i> <i>rēxērāt, he had</i> Pl. <i>rēxērāmūs, we had</i> <i>rēxērātis, ye had</i> <i>rēxērānt, they had</i>	[ruled.] <i>rēxērāt, he had</i>	S. <i>rēxissem, I should</i> <i>rēxisēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>rēxisset, he would</i> Pl. <i>rēxissemūs, we should</i> <i>rēxissetis, ye would</i> <i>rēxisSENT, they would</i>	[have ruled.] <i>rēxisset, he would</i>	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>rēgērē, to rule.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>rēxisse, to have ruled.</i> Inf. Fut. . . <i>rectūrūs esse, to be about to rule.</i> Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>rēgendum, ruling.</i> Ger. Gen. . . <i>rēgendi, of ruling.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>rēgendō, for or by ruling.</i> Sup. in <i>um</i> . <i>rectum, to rule.</i> Sup. in <i>u</i> . . <i>rectū, in ruling, or to be ruled.</i> Part. Pres. . <i>rēgens, ruling.</i> Part. Fut. . <i>rectūrūs, about to rule.</i>

* Fācō, dicō, ducō, make Imperative Present Second Person, fāc or fācē, dic, duc.
† Or, rēxī, &c., I have ruled, thou hast ruled, he has ruled, we, ye, they (have ruled).

VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. audīō, <i>I hear</i> audīs, <i>thou hearest</i> audit, <i>he hears</i> Pl. audimūs, <i>we hear</i> auditis, <i>ye hear</i> audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>	audiam, <i>I may</i> audias, <i>thou mayst</i> audiat, <i>he may</i> audiamūs, <i>we may</i> audiatīs, <i>ye may</i> audiant, <i>they may</i>	audi, <i>hear thou</i> audite, <i>hear ye.</i>
	S. audiam, <i>I shall</i> audies, <i>thou wilt</i> audiet, <i>he will</i> Pl. audiemūs, <i>we shall</i> audietīs, <i>ye will</i> audient, <i>they will</i>		auditō, <i>thou</i> auditō, <i>he</i> audītōtē, <i>ye</i> audiantō, <i>they</i> } <i>must hear.</i>
Imperfect.	S. audiēbam, <i>I was</i> audiēbās, <i>thou wast</i> audiēbāt, <i>he was</i> Pl. audiēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> audiēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> audiēbant, <i>they were</i>	audirem, <i>I might</i> audirēs, <i>thou mightst</i> audirēt, <i>he might</i> audirēmūs, <i>we might</i> audirētīs, <i>ye might</i> audirent, <i>they might</i>	} <i>hear.</i>



Perfect.	S. <i>audivī, I heard*</i> <i>audivistī, thou heardest</i> <i>audivit, he heard</i> Pl. <i>audivimūs, we heard</i> <i>audivistis, ye heard</i> <i>audivērunt v. audivērē, they heard.</i>	audivērim, <i>I may</i> <i>audivēris, thou mayst</i> <i>audivērit, he may</i> <i>audivērimūs, we may</i> <i>audivēritis, ye may</i> <i>audivērint, they may</i> have heard.	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>audirē, to hear.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>audivissē, to have heard.</i> Inf. Fut. . . <i>auditūrus essē, to be about to hear.</i> Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>audiendum, hearing.</i> Ger. Gen. . . <i>audiendī, of hearing.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>audiendō, for or by hearing.</i> Sup. in <i>um</i> . <i>auditum, to hear.</i> Sup. in <i>u</i> . . <i>auditū, in hearing, or to be heard.</i> Part. Pres.. . <i>audiens, hearing.</i> Part. Fut. . . <i>auditūrus, about to hear.</i>
Future Perfect.	S. <i>audivērō, I shall</i> <i>audivēris, thou wilt</i> <i>audivērit, he will</i> Pl. <i>audivērimūs, we shall</i> <i>audivēritūs, ye will</i> <i>audivērint, they will</i>	have heard.	
Pluperfect.	S. <i>audivēram, I had</i> <i>audivēras, thou hadst</i> <i>audivērat, he had</i> Pl. <i>audivēramūs, we had</i> <i>audivēratīs, ye had</i> <i>audivērant, they had</i>	heard. audivissem, <i>I should</i> <i>audivissēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>audivissēt, he would</i> <i>audivissēmūs, we should</i> <i>audivissētīs, ye should</i> <i>audivissent, they would</i> have heard.	

* Or, *audivī, &c., I have heard, thou hast heard, he has heard, we, ye, they (have heard).*

§ 55. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. <i>Āmor, I am</i> <i>āmā-ris vėl -rė, thou art</i> <i>āmātūr, he is</i> Pl. <i>āmāmūr, we are</i> <i>āmāminī, ye are</i> <i>āmantūr, they are</i>	<i>āmēr, I may</i> <i>āmē-ris vėl -rė, thou mayst</i> <i>āmētūr, he may</i> <i>āmēmūr, we may</i> <i>āmēmīnī, ye may</i> <i>āmentūr, they may</i>	<i>āmārė, be thou</i> <i>āmāminī, be ye</i> } <i>loved.</i>
Imperfect.	S. <i>āmābōr, I shall</i> <i>āmābē-ris vėl -rė, thou</i> <i>wilt</i> Pl. <i>āmābītūr, he will</i> <i>āmābīmūr, we shall</i> <i>āmābīmīnī, ye will</i> <i>āmābuntūr, they will</i>	<i>āmārēr, I might</i> <i>āmārē-ris vėl -rė, thou</i> <i>mightst</i> <i>āmārētūr, he might</i> <i>āmārēmūr, we might</i> <i>āmārēmīnī, ye might</i> <i>āmārentūr, they might</i>	<i>āmātōr, thou</i> <i>āmātōr, he</i> <i>āmantōr, they</i> } <i>must be loved.</i>

Perfect.	S. <i>āmātūs sum, I was</i> <i>āmātūs es, thou wast</i> <i>āmātūs est, he was</i> Pl. <i>āmātī sumūs, we were</i> <i>āmātī esīs, ye were</i> <i>āmātī sunt, they were</i> <i>loved.</i>	<i>āmātūs sim, I may</i> <i>āmātūs sis, thou mayst</i> <i>āmātūs sīt, he may</i> <i>āmātī simūs, we may</i> <i>āmātī sītīs, ye may</i> <i>āmātī sint, they may</i> <i>have been loved.</i>	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>āmārī, to be loved.*</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>āmātūs essē, to have been loved.</i> Inf. Fut. . . <i>āmātum irī.</i> Part. Perf. . . <i>āmātūs, loved.</i> Gerundive. . . <i>āmandūs, meet to be loved.</i> The ancient ending of Infinitive Present Passive was <i>ēr</i>: as, <i>āmārēr</i>; and this form is sometimes used by poets.
Future Perfect.	S. <i>āmātūs ērō, I shall</i> <i>āmātūs ērīs, thou wilt</i> <i>āmātūs ērit, he will</i> <i>āmātī ērimūs, we shall</i> <i>āmātī ēritīs, ye will</i> <i>āmātī ērunt, they will</i> <i>have been loved.</i>		
Pluperfect.	S. <i>āmātūs ēram, I had</i> <i>āmātūs ērās, thou hadst</i> <i>āmātūs ērāt, he had</i> <i>āmātī ēramūs, we had</i> <i>āmātī ērātīs, ye had</i> <i>āmātī ērant, they had</i> <i>been loved.</i>	<i>āmātūs essem, I should</i> <i>āmātūs essēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>āmātūs essēt, he would</i> <i>āmātī essēmūs, we should</i> <i>āmātī essētīs, ye would</i> <i>āmātī essent, they would</i> <i>have been loved.</i>	

* Or, *āmātūs sum, &c., I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been loved).*

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

§ 56.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. mōnēbār, <i>I am</i> mōnē-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou art</i> mōnēbūt, <i>he is</i> Pl. mōnēmūr, <i>we are</i> mōnēmīnī, <i>ye are</i> mōnentūr, <i>they are</i>	mōnēār, <i>I may</i> mōnē-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnēātūr, <i>he may</i> mōnēāmūr, <i>we may</i> mōnēāmīnī, <i>ye may</i> mōnēantūr, <i>they may</i>	mōnērē, <i>be thou</i> mōnēmīnī, <i>be ye</i>
Imperfect.	S. mōnēbār, <i>I was</i> mōnēbā-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou wast</i> mōnēbātūr, <i>he was</i> Pl. mōnēbāmūr, <i>we were</i> mōnēbāmīnī, <i>ye were</i> mōnēbantūr, <i>they were</i>	mōnērēr, <i>I might</i> mōnērē-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou mightst</i> mōnērētūr, <i>he might</i> mōnērēmūr, <i>we might</i> mōnērēmīnī, <i>ye might</i> mōnērēntūr, <i>they might</i>	mōnētōr, <i>thou</i> mōnētōr, <i>he</i> mōnentōr, <i>they</i>

Perfect.	S. mōnītūs sum, <i>I was</i> * mōnītūs es, <i>thou wast</i> mōnītūs est, <i>he was</i> Pl. mōnītī sūmūs, <i>we were</i> mōnītī estīs, <i>ye were</i> mōnītī sunt, <i>they were</i>	advised. { mōnītūs sim, <i>I may</i> mōnītūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnītūs sit, <i>he may</i> mōnītī simūs, <i>we may</i> mōnītī sitīs, <i>ye may</i> mōnītī sint, <i>they may</i> }	have been advised.
Future Perfect.	S. mōnītūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> mōnītūs ērīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnītūs ērit, <i>he will</i> Pl. mōnītī ērimūs, <i>we shall</i> mōnītī ēritīs, <i>ye will</i> mōnītī erunt, <i>they will</i>	advised. { }	VERB INFINITE. Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērī, <i>to be advised.</i> Inf. Perf.Plup. mōnītūs essē, <i>to have been advised.</i> Inf. Fut. . . mōnītum irī. Part. Perf. . mōnītūs, <i>advised.</i> Gerundive . mōnendūs, <i>meet to be advised.</i>
Pluperfect.	S. mōnītūs ēram, <i>I had</i> mōnītūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> mōnītūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> Pl. mōnītī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> mōnītī ērālīs, <i>ye had</i> mōnītī erant, <i>they had</i>	been advised. { mōnītūs essem, <i>I should</i> mōnītūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> mōnītūs essēt, <i>he would</i> mōnītī essēmūs, <i>we should</i> mōnītī essētīs, <i>ye would</i> mōnītī essent, <i>they would</i> }	have been advised.

* Or, mōnītūs sum. &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been advised).*

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD. S. Rēgōr, <i>I am</i> rēgē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou art</i> rēgētūr, <i>he is</i> Pl. rēgimūr, <i>we are</i> rēgimīni, <i>ye are</i> rēguntūr, <i>they are</i>	ruled. rēgār, <i>I may</i> rēgā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mayst</i> rēgātūr, <i>he may</i> rēgāmūr, <i>we may</i> rēgāmīni, <i>ye may</i> rēgantūr, <i>they may</i>	be ruled. rēgērē, <i>be thou</i> rēgimīni, <i>be ye</i>	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. rēgār, <i>I shall</i> rēgē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou wilt</i> rēgētūr, <i>he will</i> Pl. rēgēmūr, <i>we shall</i> rēgēmīni, <i>ye will</i> rēgentūr, <i>they will</i>	be ruled.	rēgītōr, <i>thou</i> rēgītōr, <i>he</i> rēguntōr, <i>they</i>	must be ruled.
Imperfect.	S. rēgebār, <i>I was</i> rēgebā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou wast</i> rēgebātūr, <i>he was</i> Pl. rēgebāmūr, <i>we were</i> rēgebāmīni, <i>ye were</i> rēgebantūr, <i>they were</i>	being ruled.	rēgērēr, <i>I might</i> rēgērē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mightst</i> rēgērētūr, <i>he might</i> rēgērēmūr, <i>we might</i> rēgērēmīni, <i>ye might</i> rēgērēntūr, <i>they might</i>	be ruled.

Perfect.	<i>S.</i> rectūs sum, <i>I was</i> rectūs es, <i>thou wast</i> rectūs est, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> rectī sūmūs, <i>we were</i> rectī estis, <i>ye were</i> rectī sunt, <i>they were</i> <i>ruled.</i> rectūs sim, <i>I may</i> rectūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i> rectūs sit, <i>he may</i> rectī simūs, <i>we may</i> rectī sitis, <i>ye may</i> rectī sint, <i>they may</i> <i>have been ruled.</i>	<i>VERB INFINITE.</i> <i>Inf. Pres. Imp.</i> rēgi, <i>to be ruled.</i> <i>Inf. Perf. Plup.</i> rectūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i> <i>Inf. Fut.</i> . . rectum iri. <i>Part. Perf.</i> . . rectūs, <i>ruled.</i> <i>Gerundive.</i> . . rēgendūs, <i>meet to be ruled.</i>
Future Perfect.	<i>S.</i> rectūs erō, <i>I shall</i> rectūs eris, <i>thou wilt</i> rectūs erit, <i>he will</i> <i>Pl.</i> rectī erimūs, <i>we shall</i> rectī eritis, <i>ye will</i> rectī erunt, <i>they will</i> <i>have been ruled.</i>	
Pluperfect.	<i>S.</i> rectūs eram, <i>I had</i> rectūs eras, <i>thou hadst</i> rectūs erat, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> rectī eramūs, <i>we had</i> rectī eratis, <i>ye had</i> rectī erant, <i>they had</i> <i>been ruled.</i> rectūs essem, <i>I should</i> rectūs esses, <i>thou wouldst</i> rectūs esset, <i>he would</i> rectī essēmūs, <i>we should</i> rectī essētis, <i>ye would</i> rectī essent, <i>they would</i> <i>have been ruled.</i>	

* Or. rectūs sum, &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been ruled).*



§ 58. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S. <i>Audiōr, I am</i> <i>audi-ris vel -rē, thou art</i> <i>audītūr, he is</i> Pl. <i>audimūr, we are</i> <i>audimīnī, ye are</i> <i>audiuntūr, they are</i>	S. <i>audiōr, I shall</i> <i>audiē-ris v.-rē, thou wilt</i> <i>audietūr, he will</i> Pl. <i>audiemūr, we shall</i> <i>audiemīnī, ye will</i> <i>audientūr, they will</i>	S. <i>audiōr, I may</i> <i>audi-ris v.-rē, thou mayst</i> <i>audītūr, he may</i> <i>audiamūr, we may</i> <i>audiamīnī, ye may</i> <i>audiantūr, they may</i>	S. <i>audi-rē, be thou</i> <i>audimīnī, be ye</i> <i>heard.</i>
Future Simple.	S. <i>audiēbār, I was</i> <i>audiēbā-ris v.-rē, thou wast</i> <i>audiebātūr, he was</i> Pl. <i>audiebāmūr, we were</i> <i>audiebāmīnī, ye were</i> <i>audiebantūr, they were</i>	S. <i>audi-rē, I might</i> <i>audi-ris v.-rē, thou mightst</i> <i>audietūr, he might</i> <i>audiemūr, we might</i> <i>audiemīnī, ye might</i> <i>audientūr, they might</i>	S. <i>audītōr, thou</i> <i>audītōr, he</i> <i>audiantōr, they</i> <i>must be heard.</i>
Imperfect.		S. <i>audi-rē, I might</i> <i>audi-ris v.-rē, thou mightst</i> <i>audietūr, he might</i> <i>audiemūr, we might</i> <i>audiemīnī, ye might</i> <i>audientūr, they might</i>	

Perfect.	<i>S.</i> auditūs sum, <i>I was</i> * auditūs es, <i>thou wast</i> auditūs est, <i>he was</i> . <i>Pl.</i> auditī sūmūs, <i>we were</i> auditī estīs, <i>ye were</i> auditī sunt, <i>they were</i> heard.	auditūs sim, <i>I may</i> auditūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> auditūs sit, <i>he may</i> auditī simūs, <i>we may</i> auditī sitīs, <i>ye may</i> auditī sint, <i>they may</i> have been heard.	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. audiri, <i>to be heard.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. auditūs essē, <i>to have been heard.</i> Inf. Fut. . . auditum iri. Part. Perf. . auditūs, <i>heard.</i> Gerundive . . audiendūs, <i>meet to be heard.</i>
Future Perfect.	<i>S.</i> auditūs erō, <i>I shall</i> auditūs eris, <i>thou wilt</i> auditūs erit, <i>he will</i> <i>Pl.</i> auditū erimūs, <i>we shall</i> auditū eritis, <i>ye will</i> auditū erunt, <i>they will</i> have been heard.		
Pluperfect.	<i>S.</i> auditūs eram, <i>I had</i> auditūs eras, <i>thou hadst</i> auditūs erat, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> auditū erāmūs, <i>we had</i> auditū erātīs, <i>ye had</i> auditū erant, <i>they had</i> been heard.	auditūs essem, <i>I should</i> auditūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> auditūs essēt, <i>he would</i> auditū essēmūs, <i>we should</i> auditū essētīs, <i>ye would</i> auditū essent, <i>they would</i> have been heard.	

* Or, auditūs sum. &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been heard).*

INDICATIVE MOOD.							
	Singular.			Plural.			
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Present.	Ām- Mōn- Rēg- Aud-	ō ēō ō īō	ās ēs īs īs	āt ēt īt īt	āmūs ēmūs īmūs īmūs	ātīs ētīs ītīs ītīs	ant ent unt iunt
Fut. Simple.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	} bō am	bīs ēs ēt	bīt ēmūs	bītīs ētīs	bunt ent	
Imperfect.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg-ē- Audī-ē-						
Perfect.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	} ī	istī	īt	īmūs	istīs	ērunt v. ērē
Fut. Perf.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-						
Pluperfect.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	} ēram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Present.			Future.		
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	Pl. 2.	Pl. 3.
Ām-	ā	ātē	~~~~~	ātō	ātōtē	antō
Mōn-	ē	ētē	~~~~~	ētō	ētōtē	entō
Rēo-	ē	itē	~~~~~	ītō	ītōtē	untō
Aud-	ī	itē	~~~~~	ītō	ītōtē	iuntō

Note.—When the Perfect-stem ends in *av, ev, ov, v* is often eliminated before *is* or *er* (but not before *ērē*), and contraction always follows:

āmāvistī × āmasti implēvissem × implessem nōvistī × nostī
āmāvērunt × āmārunt implēvēram × implēram nōvēram × nōram

When the Perfect-stem ends in *iv, v* is often eliminated, and contraction may follow before *is* only: audivī × audī; audivistī × audistī × audistī.

Writers sometimes cast out *is* from other Perfect forms: dixitī for dixistī, accessitī for accessistī, surrexō for surrexissē; ērepsēmūs for ērepsissēmūs.

The sign × means 'changed to.'

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
Singular.			Plural.			
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ām-	em	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
Mōn-	ēam	ēās	ēāt	ēāmūs	ēātīs	ēant
Rēg-	am	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant
Aud-	īam	īās	īāt	īāmūs	īātīs	īant

Āmā-	}	rem	rēs	rēt	rēmūs	rētīs	rent
Mōnē-							
Rēgē-							
Audī-							

Āmāv-	}	ērim	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērint
Mōnū-							
Rex-							
Audīv-							

Āmāv-	}	issem	issēs	issēt	issēmūs	issētīs	issent
Mōnū-							
Rex-							
Audīv-							

VERB INFINITIVE.						
INFINITIVE.			GERUND.			
Pres. Imperf.		Perf. Pluperf.		N. Ac.	G. D. Abl.	
Āml-	}	Āmāv-	}	Ām-and-	}	um, i, ō
Mōnē-		Mōnū-		Mōn-end-		
Rēgē-		Rex-		Rēg-end-		
Audī-		Audīv-		Audī-end-		

PARTICIPLE Pres. Impf.		SUPINES.		PARTICIPLE Futura.
Ām-	ans	Āmāt-	} 1. 2. um, ū	ūrus.
Mōn-	}	Mōnīt-		
Rēg-		Rect-		
Audī-		Audīt-		

	INDICATIVE MOOD.						
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Ăm- Mön- Rég- Aud-	ör öör ör öör	ärís* erís erís irís	ătür etür itür itür	ămür emür imür imür	ămînî emînî imînî imînî	antür entür untür untür
Fut. Simple.	Ămā- Mönē- Rég- Audī-	bör är	bērís erís v. erē	bitür etür v. erē	bimür emür	bīmînî emînî	buntür entür
Imperfect.	Ămā- Mönē- Régē- Audī-ē-	bār	bārís v. bārē	bătür	bāmür	bāmînî	bantür
Perfect.	Ămāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-	ūs sum†	ūs ēs	ūs est	ī sūmūs	ī estīs	ī sunt
Fut. Perit.	Ămāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-	ūs erō	ūs erís	ūs erīt	ī erīmūs	ī erītīs	ī erunt
Pluperfect.	Ămāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-	ūs eram	ūs erās	ūs erāt	ī erāmūs	ī erātīs	ī erant

IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
Present.			Future.			
S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.	
Ămā- Mönē- Rég- Audī-	rē rē rē rē	mînî mînî mînî mînî	tör tör tör tör	tör tör tör tör	ntör ntör untör untör	

* In the Second Pers. Pres. Indic. Passive it is not so usual to write rē for rís on account of the confusion with Infin. Act. and Imperat. Pass.

† In the periphrases fūi is occasionally used for sum, fűerō for örō, fűeram for eram, fűerim for sim, fűissem for essem, and fűisşē for eşē : ămātūs fūi, fűerō, fűeram, fűerim, fűissem, fűisşē, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ām-	}	ēr	ērīs v. ērē	ētūr	ēmūr	ēminī	entūr
Mōnē-							
Rēg-		ār	ārīs v. ārē	ātūr	āmūr	āminī	antūr
Audī-							

Āmā-	}	rēr	rērīs v.	rētūr	rēmūr	rēminī	rentūr
Mōnē-			rērē				
Rēg-							
Audī-							

Āmāt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
Mōnīt-		sim	sīs	sīt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint
Rect-							
Audīt-							

Āmāt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
Mōnīt-		essem	essēs	essēt	essēmūs	essētīs	essent
Rect-							
Andīt-							

VERB INFINITIVE.

Pres. Imperf.		INFINITIVE.		Future.	
		Perf. Pluperf.			
Āmā-	}	Amāt-	}	Amāt-	}
Mōnē-		Mōnīt-		Mōnīt-	
Rēg-		Rect-		Rect-	
Audī-		Audīt-		Audīt-	
	rī		ūs essē		um irī
	ī				
	rī				

PARTICIPLE Perfect.

Āmat-	}	ūs
Mōnīt-		
Rect-		
Audīt-		

GERUNDIVE.

Āmand-	}	ūs.
Mōnend-		
Rēgend-		
Audiend-		

§ 61. CONJUGATION OF THE DEPONENT VERB UTOR, I use (THIRD).
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<i>S.</i> Ūtōr, I use ūtē-ris v. -rē, thou usest ūtītūr, he uses <i>Pl.</i> ūtīmūr, we use ūtīmīnī, ye use ūtuntūr, they use.	ūtār, I may ūtā-ris v. -rē, thou mayst ūtātūr, he may ūtāmūr, we may ūtāmīnī, ye may ūtantūr, they may	ūtērē, use thou ūtīmīnī, use ye
Imperfect.	<i>S.</i> ūtēbār, I was ūtēbā-ris v. -rē, thou wast ūtēbātūr, he was <i>Pl.</i> ūtēbāmūr, we were ūtēbāmīnī, ye were ūtēbantūr, they were	ūtērēr, I might ūtērē-ris v. -rē, thou mightst ūtērētūr, he might ūtērēmūr, we might ūtērēmīnī, ye might ūtērēntūr, they might	ūtītōr, thou ūtītōr, he ūtuntōr, they must use.

Perfect	S. ūsūs sum, <i>I used</i> • ūsūs es, <i>thou usedst</i> ūsūs est, <i>he used</i> Pl. ūsī sūmūs, <i>we used</i> ūsī estīs, <i>ye used</i> ūsī sunt, <i>they used.</i>	ūsūs sim, <i>I may</i> ūsūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i> ūsūs sit, <i>he may</i> ūsī simūs, <i>we may</i> ūsī sitīs, <i>ye may</i> ūsī sint, <i>they may</i> <i>have used.</i>	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. ūtī, <i>to use.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. ūsūs essē, <i>to have used.</i> Inf. Fut. . . ūsūrūs essē, <i>to be about to use.</i> Ger. Nom. Ac. ūtendum, <i>using.</i> Ger. Gen. . . ūtendi, <i>of using.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. ūtendō, <i>for or by using.</i> Sup. in um . ūsum, <i>to use.</i> Sup. in u . . ūsū, <i>in using, or to be used.</i>
Future Perfect	S. ūsūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> ūsūs ēris, <i>thou wilt</i> ūsūs ērit, <i>he will</i> Pl. ūsī ērimūs, <i>we shall</i> ūsī ēritīs, <i>ye will</i> ūsī ērunt, <i>they will</i> <i>have used.</i>		
Pluperfect	S. ūsūs ēram, <i>I had</i> ūsūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> ūsūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> Pl. ūsī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> ūsī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> ūsī ērant, <i>they had</i> <i>used.</i>	ūsūs essem, <i>I should</i> ūsūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> ūsūs essēt, <i>he would</i> ūsī essēmūs, <i>we should</i> ūsī essētīs, <i>ye would</i> ūsī essent, <i>they would</i> <i>have used.</i>	

* Or, ūsūs sum. &c.. *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (used).*

		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
Present.		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Vēn-		ōr	ā-ris (rē)	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr
Vēr-		ēor	ē-ris (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
Ūt-		ōr	ē-ris (rē)	ītūr	īmūr	īmīnī	untūr
Part-		iōr	i-ris (rē)	itūr	imūr	imīnī	iuntūr
Fut. Simple.		Vēnā- Vērē- Ūt- Partī-	bōr bē-ris (rē) ē-ris (rē) ē-ris (rē)	bītūr bītūr ētūr ētūr	bīmūr bīmūr ēmūr ēmūr	bīmīnī bīmīnī ēmīnī ēmīnī	buntūr buntūr entūr entūr
Imperfect.		Vēnā- Vērē- Ūt-ē- Partī-ē-	bār bārīs v. bārē bārē	bātūr bātūr ētūr ētūr	bāmūr bāmūr ēmūr ēmūr	bāmīnī bāmīnī ēmīnī ēmīnī	bantūr bantūr entūr entūr
Perfect.		Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	ūs sum ūs ūs	ūs ēs ūs ūs	ī sūmūs ī ī	ī estīs ī ī	sunt sunt sunt sunt
Fut. Perf.		Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	ūs ērō ūs ērō	ūs ērīs ūs ērīt	ī ērīmūs ī ērītīs	ī ērītīs ī ērītīs	ērunt ērunt ērunt ērunt
Pluperfect.		Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	ūs ēram ūs ērās	ūs ērāt ūs ērāt	ī ērāmūs ī ērātīs	ī ērātīs ī ērātīs	ērāt ērāt ērāt ērāt

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.				Future.		
S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.	Pl. 3.
Vēnā- Vērē- Ūt- Partī-	rē mīnī ē-rē mīnī	tōr tōr ītōr tōr	tōr tōr ītōr tōr	tōr tōr ītōr tōr	untōr untōr untōr untōr	untōr untōr untōr untōr

Note. Some Deponents have an Active form also; as, pūnīōr and pūnīō, *punish*. Many Participles Perfect of Deponent Verbs are used Passively as well as Actively; such are, aspiciātūs, abōminātūs, adeptūs, cōmitātūs, commentūs, confessūs, dētestātūs, dignātūs, exēcorātūs, expertūs, emensūs, fūrātūs, fābricātūs, frustrātūs, imitātūs, mēditātūs, mentitūs, mēdicātūs, mēritūs, mōdērātūs, oblitūs, opīnātūs, pactūs, partītūs, pollicitūs, pōpūlātūs, praedātūs, prēcātūs, professūs, scōlitūs, testātūs, testificātūs, vērērātūs, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
VERBS.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Vēn-	ēr	ē-ris (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
Vēr-	ēār	ēā-ris (rē)	ēātūr	ēāmūr	ēāmīnī	ēantūr
Ūt-	ār	ā-ris (rē)	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr
Part-	iār	iā-ris (rē)	iātūr	iāmūr	iāmīnī	iantūr

Vēnā-	}	rēr	rērīs v. rērē	rētūr	rēmūr	rēmīnī	rentūr
Vērē-							
Ūt-ē-							
Partī-							

Vēnāt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
Vērīt-							
Ūs-							
Partīt-							

Vēnāt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
Vērīt-							
Ūs-							
Partīt-							

VERB INFINITE.						
INFIN. Pres. Imperf.		INFIN. Perf. Plup.		PART. Fut.	INFIN. Fut.	
Vēnā-	} rī	Vēnāt-	} ūs essē	ūrūs	ūrūs	essē
Vērē-		Vērīt-				
Ūt-	ī	Ūs-				
Partī-	rī	Partīt-				

PART. Pres.	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.	PART. Perf.	SUPINES.
Vēnans	Vēnand-	um, ī, ō ūs	Vēnāt-	um, ū.
Vērens	Vērend-		Vērīt-	
Ūtens	Ūtend-		Ūs-	
Partiens	Partiend-		Partīt-	

§ 63. *A.* Verbs in *ĩ-ō* of the Third Conjugation, in their Present-stem forms, retain this *ĩ* generally; but not before *i*, final *e*, and short *ř*. These Verbs are (English at pp. 68 &c.): —

Căpřō, cŭpřō, and řăcřō,
Fřđřō, fŭgřō, and řăcřō,
Păřō, řăpřō, řăpřō, quătřō,
Compounds of spēcřō and řăcřō.
Deponent: grăđřōr, pătřōr, mřřōr;
And, in some tenses, pőtřōr, řřřōr.

EXAMPLES.

ACTIVE.

- Indic. Pres. căpř-ō, căp-řs, -řt, -řmŭs, -řtřs, căpř-unt.
Fut. căpř-am, -ēs, -ět, -ēmŭs, -ětřs, -ent.
Imperf. căpř-ēbam, -ēbās, -ēbăt, -ēbāmŭs, -ēbătřs, -ēbant.
Conj. Pres. căpř-am, -ās, -ăt, -āmŭs, -ătřs, -ant.
Imperf. căp-ērem, -ērēs, -ērět, -ērēmŭs, -ērětřs, -ērent.
Imper. Pres. căp-ě, -řtě.
Fut. căp-řtō, -řtōtě, căpř-untō.

Infın. Pres. căp-ěřě. Gerund, căpř-endum, -endř, -endō.

DEPONENT.

- Indic. Pres. pătř-ōr, păt-ěřs, -řtŭr, -řmŭr, -řmřnř, pătř-untŭr.
Fut. pătř-ăr, -ěřs, -ětŭr, -ēmŭr, -ēmřnř, -entŭr.
Imperf. pătř-ēbăr, -ēbărřs, -ēbătŭr, -ēbāmŭr, -ēbāmřnř, -ēbantŭr.
Conj. Pres. pătř-ăr, -ărřs, -ătŭr, -āmŭr, -āmřnř, -antŭr.
Imperf. păt-ěřēr, -ěřērřs, -ěřětŭr, -ěřēmŭr, -ěřēmřnř, -ěrentŭr.
Imper. Pres. păt-ěřě, -řmřnř.
Fut. păt-řtōr, pătř-untōr.
Infın. Pres. păt-ř. Gerund, pătř-endŭm, -endř, -endō. Gerundive, pătř-endŭs.

Note 1. Řřřōr is conjugated like pătřōr, except a few forms which follow the Fourth Conjugation: řřřřř, řřřřř, etc. Pőtřōr follows the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Third and Fourth: pőtřřtŭr or pőtřřtŭr; pőtřmŭr or pőtřmŭr; pőtřēr or pőtřēr.

Note 2. Mřřōr, řřřōr, have Future Participles mřřřřřř, řřřřřřř.

B. Verbs in *ũō* retain *u* in all forms; indŭō, indŭřs, indŭř, indŭěřě.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 64. The Participles in *řřřs*, *dŭs*, may be conjugated with all the tenses of the Verb *sum*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
C. P. F.		C. P. F.	
C. P. G.		C. P. G.	
Amātūrūs, ā, um	Amātūrī, ae, &	Amātūrī, ae, &	Amātūrī, ae, &
Mōnētūrūs	Mōnētūrī	Mōnētūrī	Mōnētūrī
Rectūrūs	Rectūrī	Rectūrī	Rectūrī
Auditūrūs	Auditūrī	Auditūrī	Auditūrī
Venātūrūs	Venātūrī	Venātūrī	Venātūrī
Vēntūrūs	Vēntūrī	Vēntūrī	Vēntūrī
Ūsūrūs	Ūsūrī	Ūsūrī	Ūsūrī
Partiūrūs	Partiūrī	Partiūrī	Partiūrī
Pres. sum	est	sumūs	sint
S. Fut. erō	erīs	erimūs	erūt
Imp. eram	erās	erāmūs	erant
Perf. fui	-isti	fui-mūs	-erunt
Fut. P. fū-erō	-erīs	fū-erimūs	-erint
Impf. fū-eram	-erās	fū-erāmūs	-erant
Indic. M.		Indic. M.	
Conj. M.		Conj. M.	
Inf. Pres. esse		Inf. Pres. esse	
" Perf. fuisse.		" Perf. fuisse.	
essēs		essētis	
-eris		-eritis	
-issem		-issetis	
fū-erim		fū-erimūs	
fū-isse		fū-issēmūs	

In translating, it is only required to construe each part of the Verb sum, as given in the Table, § 50, with each Participle: amātūrūs sum, *I am about to love*; amandūs sum, *I am meet to be loved*. So also fūtūrūs sum, *I am about to be*; fātūrūs sim, *eram, essem, &c.*

SIGNS OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.

§ 65. The Latin Tenses may be variously rendered:

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. *āmō, love, am loving.*

Imp. *āmābam, loved, was loving, used to love.*

Perf. *āmāvī, loved (Simple Past), have loved (Present Past).*

§ 66. The Conjunctive Mood has two general uses:

(1) Pure, or not subordinate to another Verb:

(2) Subjunctive, or subordinate to another Verb.

1. The Pure Conjunctive is rendered in English with auxiliary Verbs for Signs; generally *would* or *should*; sometimes *can*, *could*; *may*, *might*; *shall*, or *will*:

āmem tē (sī bōnūs sīs),

I can love you (if you are good).

āmārem tē (sī bōnūs essēs),

I should—would—love you (if you were good), or

I should have been loving you (if you were good).

āmāvissem tē (sī bōnūs fūissēs or essēs),

I should—would—have loved you (had you been good).

2. When the Mood is Subjunctive, it sometimes has a sign in English: *ēdē ūt vivās, eat that you may live*; but oftener it must be rendered as if it were Indicative: *sīs, essēs, fūissēs*, in the last Examples. So:

Laudātūr quōd pāruērīt, he is praised in that he obeyed.

Laudāvi eum quī pāruissēt, I praised him (as one) who had obeyed.

§ 67. The Present Conjunctive is also used Imperatively:

Active.

Āmem, may I, or let me

Āmēs, mayst thou, or see

thou

Āmēt, may he, or let him

Āmēmūs, may we, or let us

Āmētīs, may ye, or see ye

Āment, may they, or let them

love.

Passive.

Āmēr, may I, or let me

Āmēris, mayst thou, or see

thou

Āmētūr, may he, or let him

Āmēmūr, may we, or let us

Āmēmīni, may ye, or see ye

Āmentūr, may they, or let them

be loved.

THE INFINITIVES.

§ 68. The Infinitives in *rě, rī*, are Present or Imperfect ; Infinitives in *issě, tūs-essě*, Perfect or Pluperfect :

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) <i>Dicītūr āmārě,</i>
<i>He is said to be loving.</i> | (1) <i>Dicītūr āmārī,</i>
<i>He is said to be loved.</i> |
| <i>Dicēbatūr āmārě,</i>
<i>He was said to have been loving.</i> | <i>Dicēbatūr āmārī,</i>
<i>He was said to have been (at the time) loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciō ěum āmārě,</i>
<i>I know (that) he is loving.</i> | <i>Sciō ěum āmārī,</i>
<i>I know (that) he is loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciēbam ěum āmārě,</i>
<i>I knew (that) he was loving.</i> | <i>Sciēbam ěum āmārī,</i>
<i>I knew (that) he was loved.</i> |
| (2) <i>Dicītūr āmāvissě,</i>
<i>He is said to have loved.</i> | (2) <i>Dicītūr āmātūs essě,</i>
<i>He is said to have been loved.</i> |
| <i>Dicēbatūr āmāvissě,</i>
<i>He was said to have loved.</i> | <i>Dicēbatūr āmātūs essě,</i>
<i>He was said to have been (at a former time) loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciō ěum āmāvissě,</i>
<i>I know (that) he loved.</i>
<i>I know (that) he has loved.</i> | <i>Sciō ěum āmātum essě,</i>
<i>I know he was loved.</i>
<i>I know he has been loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciēbam ěum āmāvissě,</i>
<i>I knew (that) he had loved.</i> | <i>Sciēbam ěum āmātum essě,</i>
<i>I knew he had been loved.</i> |

§ 69. A. The Future Infinitive Active has two forms, *-ūrūs essě* *urūs fūissě*, the uses of which a few instances will show :—

- (a) *Crēdērīs ĩtūrūs essě, you are believed to be about to go.*
Crēdō tē ĩtūrum essě, I believe (that) you will go.
- (b) *Crēdēbārīs ĩtūrūs essě, you were believed to be about to go.*
Crēdēbam tē ĩtūrum essě, I believed that you would go.
- (c) *Crēdērīs ĩtūrūs fūissě, you are believed to have been about to go.*
Crēdō tē ĩtūrum fūissě, I believe that you would have gone.

B The Future Infinitive Passive is formed by the union of the Supine in *um* with the Impersonal Infinitive *irī* :

Crādō āmātūm irī Jūliam, (lit.) *I believe there-is-a-tending to love Julia* ; i.e., *I believe Julia will be loved*.

Aiunt ultum irī injūriās, *they say that the wrongs will be avenged*.

a. The same may be expressed by *fūtūrum essē ūt, fōrē ūt*, with *āmētūr, āmārētūr* ;

Crādō fūtūrum-essē (or fōrē) ūt Jūliā āmētūr, *I believe (that) Julia will be loved*.

Crēdebam fōrē ūt Jūliā āmārētūr, *I believed (that) Julia would be loved*

GERUND.—SUPINES.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 70. *A*. The Gerund is perhaps the Neuter Gerundive Participle declined as a Verb-Nonn (*um, ī, ō*).

B. The Supines are Cases (Accusative and Ablative) of a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension.

C. The Gerundive (*ūs, ā, um*, like *bōnūs*) is used to express meetness or necessity, either impersonally, *ēundum est*, *one must go* ; or personally, *vitā tūendā est*, *life should be protected*. If a Case of the Person is added, that Case is usually the Dative : *ēundum est mihi*, *I must go* : *vitā nōbīs tūendā est*, *life should be protected by us*.

D The other Participles are—

Active. Pres. *āmans*, *loving*, like *ingens*.

Fut. *āmātūrūs*, *about to love*, } like *bōnūs*.

Passive. Perf. *āmātūs*, *loved*,

The three Participles wanting may be thus supplied :

Act. Part. Perf. '*having loved*,' *quum āmāvissēt* (or by § 125.)

Pass. Part. Pres. '*being loved*,' *quī āmātūr*, or *dum āmātūr*.

„ Part. Fut. '*about to be loved*,' *quī āmābitūr*.

E. Some Verbs form Participials in

–*bundūs*, –*cundūs*, expressing '*fulness*,' *vāgābundūs*, *wandering*,
irācundūs, *wrathful* ;

–*bīlīs*, expressing '*possibility*,' *pārābīlīs*, *procurable* ;

–*īlīs*, „ '*capacity*,' *dōcīlīs*, *teachable* ;

–*ax*, „ '*inclination*,' *lōquax*, *talkative* ;

–*īdūs* „ '*active force*,' *rāpīdūs*, *hurrying*, *cūpīdūs*,
desirous.

DERIVED VERBS.

§ 71. I. Frequentative Verbs express repeated or intenser action, are of the First Conjugation, and formed either in *-tō, -sō*, from Supine-stems: *cantō, I sing* (cānō, cantum), *cursō, I run* (currō, cursum); or by adding *-ī-tō, -ī-tōr* to the Clipt Stem, *rōgītō, I ask often* (rōgō).

II. Inceptive Verbs express beginning of action, are of the Third Conjugation, and formed by adding *-scō* to the Present-stem:

Lābascō,	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from lābārē.
Pallescō,	<i>I turn pale,</i>	„ pallērē.

Or from Nouns, with suffix *-a-scō* or *-e-scō*;

Pūēascō,	<i>I become a boy,</i>	from pūēr.
Mīlescō,	<i>I become mild,</i>	„ mītis.

III. Desiderative Verbs express desire of action, are of the Fourth Conjugation, and formed, by adding *-ūrīō* to the Supine-stem:

Ēsūrīō,	<i>I am hungry,</i>	from ēdō, ēs-um.
Partūrīō,	<i>I am in labour,</i>	„ pāriō, part-um.

QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 72. The Verbs which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning are:

Exulō, <i>I am banished</i> (ārē).	Vāpūlō, <i>I am beaten</i> (ārē).
Fīō, <i>I am made.</i>	Vēnēō, <i>I am on sale</i> (īrē).
Līcēō, <i>I am put to auction.</i>	

§ 73. The Verbs which have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, are:

Audēō, <i>I dare,</i>	Perf. ausūs sum, <i>I dared.</i>
Fidō, <i>I trust,</i>	„ fīsūs sum, <i>I trusted.</i>
Gaudēō, <i>I am glad,</i>	„ gāvīsūs sum, <i>I was glad.</i>
Sōlēō, <i>I am wont,</i>	„ sōlītūs sum, <i>I was wont.</i>

Some have Active Perfect with Dependent Perfect Participles:

Present.	Perfect.	Part. Perf.
Jūrō, <i>I swear</i>	jūrāvī, <i>I swore</i>	jūrātūs, <i>having sworn.</i>
Cēnō, <i>I sup</i>	cēnāvī, <i>I supped</i>	cēnātūs, <i>having supped.</i>
Prandēō, <i>I dine</i>	prandī, <i>I dined</i>	pransūs, <i>having dined.</i>

So nuptā, *wedded*, pōtūs, *having drunk*, and some others.



DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs want some of the usual parts of a Verb.

§ 74. I. The Verbs *coepī*, *I have begun*, *ōdī*, *I hate*, *mēmīnī*, *I remember*, have no Present-stem Tenses.

SCHEME.

	Indic.	Conj.	Infīn.	
Coep-	} ī ōrō ēmām	ērim	issē	Perf.
Ōd-				Fut. Perf.
Mēmīn-		issem	issē	Plup.

Mēmīnī has Imperative Fut. Sing. *mēmentō*; Plur. *mēmentōtē*

Coepī has Part. Perf. *coeptūs*; Fut. *coeptūrūs*.

Ōdī " " *ōsūs* " *ōsūrūs*.

a. Nōvī, *I know* (from *noscō*), is similarly used.

II. Many Verbs have Perfect without Supine (see Table), and many Inceptive and other Verbs have neither Perfect nor Supine: *as*, *mītescō*. *pollēō*, *fūrō*, *fēriō*.

III. Verbs Defective in other forms:

(1) *Aiō*, *I say 'ay,' affirm*.

Indic. Pres. *aiō*, *āis*, *āit* — — *aiunt*.

" Imperf. *aiēbam*, *-bās*, &c., complete.

Conj. Pres. — *aiās*, *aiāt* — — *aiant*.

(2) *Inquam*, *I say*.

Indic. Pres. *inquam*, *inquīs*, *inquīt*, *inquīmūs* — *inquīunt*.

" Imperf. — — *inquīēbāt* — — *inquīēbant*.

" S. Fut. — *inquīēs*, *inquīēt*.

" Perf. — *inquīstī*, *inquīt*.

Imper. Pres. *inquē* — — *inquītē*.

(3) *Quaesō*, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. *quaesūmus*.

(4) *Fārī*, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms: *as*, *fātūr*, *he speaks*; *fābōr*, *I shall speak*; *fārē*, *speak thou*. Participles: *fātūs*; *fandūs*. Gerund: *fandī*, *fandō*.

(5) The Imperatives:

a. Apāgē, *begone*.

Cēdō, *cēdītē* (or *cettē*), *give here*.

Hāvē (or *āvē*), *hāvētē*, *hail*. Infīn. *hāvērē*.

Salvē, *salvētē*, *hail*. Infīn. *salvērē*. Fut. *salvēbīs*.

b. Āgē, *āgītē*, *come*; *Vālē*, *vālētē*, *farewell*; Infīn. *vālērē*; are used with special meaning, but their Verbs *āgō*, *vālēō*, are fully conjugated.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 75. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated (as such) only in the Third Persons Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive.

A. Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice.

(1) The principal of these are of the Second Conjugation :

Ōportēt, dēcēt, dēdēcēt,	<i>it behoves, beseems, misbeseems,</i>
Pīgēt, pūdēt, paenitēt,	<i>it irks, shames, repents,</i>
Taetēt add and mīserēt,	<i>it disgusts, moves pity,</i>
Lībēt, licēt, and liquēt,	<i>it pleases, is lawful, is clear,</i>
Attinēt and pertinēt.	<i>it relates, belongs.</i>

Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs (Second).

	Indic.	Conjunc.	Inf.
	1. Ōport-		
	2. Dēc-		
	3. Dēdēc-		
mē, tē, ēum,	4. Pīg-	ēt	ēt.
nōs, vōs, ēōs	5. Pūd-	ēbīt.	ēbīt.
	6. Paenit-	ēbāt	ērēt.
	7. Taed-	ūt	ūrīt
	8. Mīser-	ūrīt.	ūissē.
mīhī, etc.	9. Līb-	ūrāt	ūissēt.
	10. Lic-		
ād mē, etc.	11. Attin-		
	12. Pertin-		

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

Sing.	Ōportēt mē irē,	<i>it behoves me</i>	} to go,	or I	} ought to go.
	ōportēt tē irē,	" " <i>you</i>		<i>you</i>	
	ōportēt ēum irē,	" " <i>him</i>		<i>he</i>	
Plur.	ōportēt nōs irē,	" " <i>us</i>	} to go,	<i>we</i>	} may go.
	ōportēt vōs irē,	" " <i>you</i>		<i>ye</i>	
	ōportēt ēōs irē,	" " <i>them</i>		<i>they</i>	

Sing.	Licēt mīhī irē,	<i>it is allowed me</i>	} to go,	or I	} may go.	
	licēt tībī irē,	" " you				you
	licēt ēī irē,	" " him				he
Plur.	licēt nōbis irē,	" " us	} to go,		} may go.	
	licēt vōbis irē,	" " you				we
	licēt īis irē,	" " them				ye they

So in the other Tenses and Moods.



(2) Among Impersonal Verbs of other Conjugations are :

Accidit, <i>it happens</i>	} mihī, tibi, ēi, etc.	Dēlectāt, <i>it charms</i>	} mē, tē, ēum, etc. mēā, tūā, ējūs, etc.
Contingit, <i>it befalls</i>		Jūvāt, <i>it delights</i>	
Ēvenit, <i>it turns out</i>		Intērest, <i>it concerns</i>	
Convēnit, <i>it suits</i>		Rēfert, <i>it imports</i>	
Expēdit, <i>it is expedient</i>		Constāt, <i>it is acknowledged.</i>	

(3) Some Impersonals express *changes of season and weather* :

Fulgūrāt, <i>it lightens.</i>	Tōnāt, <i>it thunders.</i>
Ningit, <i>it snows.</i>	Lūcescit, <i>it dawns.</i>
Plūit, <i>it rains.</i>	Vespērascit, <i>it gets late.</i>

§ 76. B. (1) Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice : lūdītūr, *there is playing*, from lūdō, *I play*.

	Indicative.	Conjunctive.	Infinitive.
Present	Lūdītūr	lūdātūr	lūdi.
Simple Fut.	lūdētūr		lūsum iri.
Imperf.	lūdēbātūr	lūdērētūr.	
Perfect	lūsum est	lūsum sīt	lūsum essē.
Fut. Perf.	lūsum ērit		
Pluperf.	lūsum ērāt	lūsum essēt	lūsum fūissē.

The Persons may be expressed by an Ablative of the Agent :

Present Indicative.

Sing.	Lūdītūr ā mē, <i>there is playing by me,</i>	or <i>I play,</i>
	lūdītūr ā tē, " " <i>thee, thou playest,</i>	
	lūdītūr āb ēō, " " <i>him, he plays,</i>	
Plur.	lūdītūr ā nōbīs, " " <i>us, we play,</i>	
	lūdītūr ā vōbīs " " <i>you, ye play,</i>	
	lūdītūr āb hīs, " " <i>them, they play.</i>	

But the Ablative is often omitted, being understood from the context.

§ 77. (2) The Neuter Gerundive is used impersonally with *essē* to express meetness or necessity : sometimes with Dative of Person.

Present Indicative.

Sing.	Lūdendum est mihī, <i>there must be playing by me,</i>	or <i>I</i>	} <i>must play.</i>
	lūdendum est tibi, " " " <i>thee, thou</i>		
	lūdendum est ēi, " " " <i>him, he</i>		
Plur.	lūdendum est nōbīs, " " " <i>us, we</i>		
	lūdendum est vōbīs " " " <i>you, ye</i>		
	lūdendum est ēīs, " " " <i>them, they</i>		

Here too the Case is often omitted : nunc est bibendum. *now we (or men) must drink.*

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

§ 78. Anomalous Verbs do not form all their parts according to rule. Sometimes their Tenses are *borrowed* from several stems, as in sum, possum, fērō; sometimes their irregularities arise from mutation of letters, as in vōlō, nōlō, mālō, ēō, quēō, ēdō.

§ 79. CONJUGATION-FORM OF ANOMALOUS VERBS.

	1. <i>Be able.</i>	2. <i>Wish.</i>	3. <i>Not-wish.</i>	4. <i>Wish-rather.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Possum	Vōlō	Nōlō	Mālō
2 Pers. "	pōtēs	vis	nonvis	māvis
Infīn. "	possē	vellē	nollē	mallē
Perfect	pōtū-i	vōlū-i	nōlū-i	mālū-i
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	—	(vōlend-um)	(nōlend-um)	(mālend-um)
" <i>dī</i>	—	vōlend-i	nōlend-i	mālend-i
" <i>dō</i>	—	vōlend-ō	nōlend-ō	mālend-ō
Part. Pres.	—	vōlens	nōlens	mālens

Pōtens, *able, powerful*, is used as an Adjective.

	5. <i>Bear.</i>	6. <i>Be made.</i>	7. <i>Go.</i>	8. <i>Can.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Fērō	Fīō	Ēō	Quēō
2 Pers. "	fers	fis	is	quis
Infīn. "	ferrē	fīrī	irē	quirē
Perfect	tūlī	factūs sum	ivī	quivī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	fērend-um	—	ēund-um	—
" <i>dī</i>	fērend-i	—	ēund-i	—
" <i>dō</i>	fērend-ō	—	ēund-ō	—
Supine in <i>um</i>	lāt-um	—	īt-um	—
" <i>ū</i>	lāt-ū	—	īt-ū	—
Part. Pres.	fēr-ens	—	iens (ēunt-is)	—
" Fut.	lāt-ūrūs	—	īt-ūrūs	—

5. Fērōr (Passive) has Pres. Ind. 2. ferrīs (for fēr-ērīs); 3. fertūr; Imperf. Conj. fēr-r-ēr (for fēr-ērēr), ferrērīs, etc., and Inf. ferī. Other Present-stem forms are regular. Supine-stem forms, lātūs sum, etc.

6. Fīō in the Present-stem forms is the Passive of faciō, which is regular in the Active, and in the Supine-stem forms of the Passive.

8. Qūeo and its compound nēquēō (*cannot*) form their tenses like ēō.

9. Ēdō, *I eat*, often changes some of its forms as follows:

Pres. 2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.	Infīn.	Imperf. Conj.
ēdis or ēs	ēdit or est	ēdērē or essē	ēdērem or essem.

Pres. Conj. ēdim, ēdis, ēdīt, is used. Other forms are regular.

	Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
		Possum	pōtēs	pōtest	possumūs	pōtestīs	pōssunt
		Vōlō	vis	vult	vōlūmūs	vultīs	vōlunt
		Nōlō	nonvis	nonvult	nōlūmūs	nonvultīs	nōlunt
		Mālo	māvis	māvult	mālūmūs	māvultīs	mālunt
		Fērō	fers	fert	fērīmūs	fertīs	fērunt
		Fiō	fis	fit	—	—	fiunt
		Ēō	īs	it	īmūs	ītīs	ēunt
Future Simple.	Pōt- Vōl- Nōl- Māl- Fēr- Fi- I-	ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
		am	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
Imperfect.	Pōt- Vōl- Nōl- Māl- Fēr- Fi- I-	bō	bīs	bīt	bīmūs	bītīs	bunt
		eram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant
Perfect.	Pōtū- Vōlū- Nōlū- Mālū- Tūl- — Iv-	i	istī	it	īmūs	istīs	ērunt or ērē
		erō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
Future Perfect.	Pōtū- Vōlū- Nōlū- Mālū- Tūl- — Iv-	ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
		eram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant
Pluperfect.	Pōtū- Vōlū- Nōlū- Mālū- Tūl- — Iv-	eram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant
		eram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant

ANOMALOUS VERRS.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.							
Present Tense.	Singular.	1.	2.	3.	1.	Plural. 2.	3.
Poss- Văl- Nöl- Mäl- Fër- Fî- Ë- }	}	im	is	ît	îmûs	îtîs	int
am	ās	ăt	ămûs	ătîs	ant		
Imper. Tense.	Singular.	1.	2.	3.	1.	Plural. 2.	3.
Poss- Vell- Noll- Mall- Ferr- Fiër- Îr- }	}	em	ēs	ět	ēmûs	ētîs	ert
Perf. Tense.	Singular.	1.	2.	3.	1.	Plural. 2.	3.
Pötü- Völü- Nölü- Mälü- Tül- — Îv- }	}	ërim	ëris	ërit	ërimûs	ëritîs	ërint
Pluperf. Tense.	Singular.	1.	2.	3.	1.	Plural. 2.	3.
Pötü- Völü- Nölü- Mälü- Tül- — Îv- }	}	issem	issēs	issēt	issēmûs	issētîs	issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.				(For the Parts of VERB INFINITE, see Form of Conjugation, § 79.)
Present.				
Singular.	2.	Plural.	2.	
(3) Nölî		nölîtê		
(5) Fër		fertô		
(6) Fî		fitê		
(7) Î		îtê		
Future.				
2.	3.	2.	3.	
(3) Nölîtô	nölîtô	nölîtôtê	nôluntô	
(5) Fertô	fertô	fêrtôtê	fêruntô	
(7) Îtô	îtô	îtôtê	êuntô	

§ 81. TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE. (See § 48, Note 2.)

I. FIRST CONJUGATION (Character **A**: ĀmĀ-rē).

Usual Form :	Present. (ā-ō) -ō	Infinitive. -āre	Perfect. -vī	Supine. -tum
	Ām-ō	-āre	āmā-vī	āmā-tum.

Exceptions.

-ūī, -ītum.

	Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(1)	Crēpō	-āre	crēpūī	crēpītum	<i>creak.</i>
2.	Cūbō	-āre	cūbūī	cūbītum	<i>lie down.</i>
3.	Dōmō	-āre	dōmūī	dōmītum	<i>tame.</i>
4.	Micō	-āre	micūī	—	<i>glitter.</i>
5.	Plīcō	-āre	-plīcūī	-plīcītum	<i>fold.</i>
6.	Sōnō	-āre	sōnūī	sōnītum	<i>sound.</i>
7.	Tōnō	-āre	tōnūī	tōnītum	<i>thunder.</i>
8.	Vētō	-āre	vētūī	vētītum	<i>forbid.</i>

-ūī, -tum.

(2) —	Sēcō	-āre	sēcūī	sectum	<i>cut.</i>
-------	------	------	-------	--------	-------------

Redupl., -tum.

(3)	1. Dō	-āre	dēdī	dātum	<i>give.</i>
	2. Stō	-āre	stētī	statum	<i>stand.</i>

-vī, -tum.

(4)	1. Jūvō	-āre	jūvī	jūtum	<i>help.</i>
	2. Lāvō	-āre	lāvī	lōtum	<i>wash.</i>

(1) 5. Also plīcāvī, plīcātum.

(3) 1. Dō, dārē, has short ā throughout ; with the compounds circumdō, surround ; pessumdō, ruin ; venumdō, put on sale, which form -dēdī, -dātum. The other compounds pass to the Third Conj. and form -didī, -dītum. III. 18

2. Comp. ad- con- ob- per- prae-stō, etc., form stētī, statum (-stītum rare).

(4) 2. Also Sud, lavatum.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION (Character **B**: Monē-rē).

Usual Form :	-ēō	-ūī	-ītum
	Mōn-ēō	-ērē	mōn-ūī
			mōn-ītum.

Exceptions.

-vī, -tum.

(1)	1. Dēlēō	-ēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum	<i>blot out.</i>
	2. Flēō	-ēre	flēvī	flētum	<i>weep.</i>
	3. Plēō	-ēre	plēvī	plētum	<i>fill.</i>

-ūī, -tum.

(2)	1. Dōcēō	-ēre	dōcūī	doctum	<i>teach.</i>
	2. Miscēō	-ēre	miscūī	mistum	<i>mix.</i>
	3. Tēnēō	-ēre	tēnūī	-tentum	<i>hold.</i>

(1) 5. -plēcūī -plīcītum. Forms thus noted are only used in the compounds

-sī, -tum.

	Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(3) 1.	Augēō	-ērē	auxī	auctum	<i>increase.</i>
2.	Torquēō	-ērē	torsī	tortum	<i>twist.</i>
3.	Lūgēō	-ērē	luxī	—	<i>mourn.</i>

-sī, -sum.

(4) 1.	Mulcēō	-ērē	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe.</i>
2.	Ardēō	-ērē	arsī	arsum	<i>take fire.</i>
3.	Ridēō	-ērē	risī	risum	<i>laugh.</i>
4.	Suādēō	-ērē	suāsī	suāsum	<i>advise.</i>
5.	Mānēō	-ērē	mansī	mansum	<i>remain.</i>
6.	Jūbēō	-ērē	jussi	jussum	<i>command.</i>
7.	Haerēō	-ērē	haesi	haesum	<i>stick.</i>
8.	Fulgēō	-ērē	fulsi	—	<i>glitter.</i>
9.	Lūcēō	-ērē	luxī	—	<i>shine.</i>

Redupl., -sum.

(5) 1.	Mordēō	-ērē	mōmordi	morsum	<i>bite.</i>
2.	Pendēō	-ērē	pēpendi	pensum	<i>hang.</i>
3.	Spondēō	-ērē	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise.</i>
4.	Tondēō	-ērē	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shear.</i>

-ī, -sum.

(6) 1.	Prandēō	-ērē	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine.</i>
2.	Sēdēō	-ērē	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit.</i>
3.	Vīdēō	-ērē	vidi	vīsum	<i>see.</i>

-ī, -tum.

(7) 1.	Cāvēō	-ērē	cāvi	cautum	<i>beware.</i>
2.	Fāvēō	-ērē	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour.</i>
3.	Fōvēō	-ērē	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish.</i>
4.	Mōvēō	-ērē	mōvi	mōtum	<i>move.</i>
5.	Vōvēō	-ērē	vōvi	vōtum	<i>vow.</i>

Semi-deponent.

(8) 1.	Audēō	-ērē	ausūs sum	—	<i>dare.</i>
2.	Gaudēō	-ērē	gāvisūs sum	—	<i>rejoice.</i>
3.	Sōlēō	-ērē	sōlītūs sum	—	<i>be wont.</i>

III. THIRD CONJUGATION (Character a **Consonant** or **V**).

Form various. Rēg-ērē; Indū-ērē.

A. Consonant-Verbs.

Guttural Stems, -sī, -tum (*five -sum*).

(1) 1.	Dicō	-ērē	dixī	dictum	<i>say.</i>
2.	Dūcō	-ērē	duxī	ductum	<i>lead.</i>
3.	Cingō	-ērē	cinxi	cinctum	<i>surround.</i>
4.	Cōquō	-ērē	coxi	coctum	<i>cook.</i>
5.	Figō	-ērē	fixī	fixum	<i>fix.</i>
6.	Fingō	-ērē	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion.</i>
7.	Jungō	-ērē	junxi	junctum	<i>join.</i>

PRESENT, PERFECT, AND SUPINE :

Present.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
8. Pingō	-ērē	pinxī	pictum	<i>paint.</i>
9. Rēgō	-ērē	rexī	rectum	<i>rule.</i>
10. Tēgō	-ērē	texī	tectum	<i>cover.</i>
11. -stinguō	-ērē	-stinxī	-stinctum	<i>quench.</i>
12. Tinguō	-ērē	tinxī	tinctum	<i>dye.</i>
13. Unguō	-ērē	unxī	unctum	<i>anoint.</i>
(2) 1. Trāhō	-ērē	traxī	tractum	<i>draw.</i>
2. Vēhō	-ērē	vexī	vectum	<i>carry.</i>
3. Vivō	-ērē	vixī	victum	<i>live.</i>
4. Flūō	-ērē	fluxī	fluxum	<i>flow.</i>
5. Strūō	-ērē	struxī	structum	<i>pile.</i>
6. -lāciō	-ērē	-lexī	-lectum	<i>entice.</i>
7. -spēciō	-ērē	-spexī	-spectum	<i>esp.</i>
(3) 1. Mergō	-ērē	mersī	mersum	<i>drown.</i>
2. Spargō	-ērē	sparsī	sparsum	<i>sprinkle.</i>
3. Tergō	-ērē	tersī	tersum	<i>wipe.</i>

Dental Stems, -sī, -sum.

(4) 1. Claudō	-ērē	clausī	clausum	<i>shut.</i>
2. Divīdō	-ērē	divisī	divisum	<i>divide.</i>
3. Laedō	-ērē	laesī	laesum	<i>hurt.</i>
4. Lūdō	-ērē	lūsī	lūsum	<i>play.</i>
5. Plaudō	-ērē	plausī	plausum	<i>clap the hands.</i>
6. Rādō	-ērē	rāsī	rāsum	<i>scrape.</i>
7. Rōdō	-ērē	rōsī	rōsum	<i>gnaw.</i>
8. Trūdō	-ērē	trūsī	trūsum	<i>thrust.</i>
9. Vādō	-ērē	-vāsī	-vāsum	<i>go.</i>
10. Cēdō	-ērē	cessī	cessum	<i>yield.</i>
11. Mittō	-ērē	mīsī	missum	<i>send.</i>
12. Quāt-īō	-ērē	(quassī)	quassum	<i>shake.</i>
13. Flectō	-ērē	flexī	flexum	<i>bend.</i>
14. Nectō	-ērē	nexī	nexum	<i>bind.</i>

Labial Stems, -sī, -tum.

(5) 1. Carpō	-ērē	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck.</i>
2. Repō	-ērē	repsi	reptum	<i>creep.</i>
3. Scalpō	-ērē	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch.</i>
4. Serpō	-ērē	(serpsi)	(serptum)	<i>crawl.</i>
5. Nūbō	-ērē	nupsi	nuptum	<i>be married.</i>
6. Scribō	-ērē	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write.</i>

Liquid Stems, -sī, -tum (one -sum).

(6) 1. Cōmō	-ērē	compsi	comptum	<i>adorn.</i>
2. Dēmō	-ērē	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away.</i>
3. Prōmō	-ērē	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth.</i>
4. Sūmō	-ērē	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take.</i>
5. Temnō	-ērē	tempsi	temptum	<i>despise.</i>
6. Prēmō	-ērē	pressi	pressum	<i>press.</i>
7. Gērō	-ērē	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on.</i>
8. Ūrō	-ērē	ussi	ustum	<i>burn.</i>

Stem various, -ŭi, -tum (*one -sum*).

	Present.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(7) 1.	Elicĩō	-ērē	ēlicũi	ēlicĩtum	<i>entice forth.</i>
2.	Cumbō	-ērē	cũbũi	cũbĩtum	<i>lie down.</i>
3.	Rāpĩō	-ērē	rāpũi	raptum	<i>seize.</i>
4.	Strēpō	-ērō	strēpũi	strēpĩtum	<i>roar.</i>
5.	Mētō	-ērē	messũi	messum	<i>mow.</i>
6.	Alō	-ērē	ālũi	altum	<i>nourish.</i>
7.	Cōlō	-ērē	cōlũi	cultum	<i>till.</i>
8.	Consũlō	-ērē	consũlũi	consultum	<i>consult.</i>
9.	Occũlō	-ērē	occũlũi	occultum	<i>hide.</i>
10.	Vōlō	vello	vōlũi	—	<i>wish.</i>
11.	Frēmō	-ērē	frēmũi	frēmĩtum	<i>murmur.</i>
12.	Gēmō	-ērē	gēmũi	gēmĩtum	<i>groan.</i>
13.	Trēmō	-ērē	trēmũi	—	<i>tremble.</i>
14.	Vōmō	-ērē	vōmũi	vōmĩtum	<i>vomit.</i>
15.	Pōnō	-ērē	pōsũi	pōsĩtum	<i>place.</i>
16.	Gignō	-ērē	gēnũi	gēnĩtum	<i>produce.</i>
17.	Sērō	-ērē	sērũi	sertum	<i>join.</i>
• 18.	Texō	-ērē	texũi	textum	<i>weave.</i>

Present Stem Anomalous, -vĩ, -tum.

(8) 1.	Lĩnō	-ērō	lēvĩ	lĩtum	<i>smear.</i>
2.	Sĩnō	-ērē	sĩvĩ	sĩtum	<i>allow.</i>
3.	Cernō	-ērō	crēvĩ	crētum	<i>sift, discern.</i>
4.	Spērnō	-ērē	sprēvĩ	sprētum	<i>despise.</i>
5.	Sternō	-ērō	strāvĩ	strātum	<i>strew.</i>
6.	Sērō	-ērē	sēvĩ	sātum	<i>sow.</i>
7.	Crescō	-ērē	crēvĩ	crētum	<i>grow.</i> [with.
8.	Noscō	-ērē	nōvĩ	nōtum	<i>become acquainted</i>
9.	Pascō	-ērē	pāvĩ	pastum	<i>feed.</i>
10.	Quiescō	-ērē	quĩēvĩ	—	<i>rest.</i>
11.	Suescō	-ērē	suēvĩ	suētum	<i>be wont.</i>
12.	Cupĩō	-ērē	cũpĩvĩ	cũpĩtum	<i>desire.</i>
13.	Pētō	-ērē	pētĩvĩ	pētĩtum	<i>seek.</i>
14.	Quaerō	-ērē	quaesĩvĩ	quaesĩtum	<i>seek.</i>
15.	Tērō	-ērē	trĩvĩ	trĩtum	<i>rub.</i>
16.	Arcessō	-ērē	arcessĩvĩ	arcessĩtum	<i>send for.</i>
17.	Lācessō	-ērē	lācessĩvĩ	lācessĩtum	<i>provoke.</i>

Redupl., -tum or -sum.

(9) 1.	Pendō	-ērē	pēpendĩ	pensum	<i>weigh.</i>
2.	Tendō	-ērē	tētendĩ	tensum(-tum)	<i>stretch.</i>
3.	Discō	-ērē	dĩdĩcĩ	—	<i>learn.</i>
4.	Poscō	-ērē	pōposcĩ	—	<i>demand.</i>
5.	Currō	-ērē	cũcurrĩ	cursum	<i>run.</i>
6.	Pungō	-ērē	pũpũgĩ	punctum	<i>prick.</i>
7.	Tundō	-ērē	tũtũdĩ	tunsum	<i>thump.</i>
8.	Fallō	-ērē	fēfēllĩ	falsum	<i>deceive.</i>
9.	Parcō	-ērē	pēpercĩ	parsum	<i>spare.</i>
10.	Pārĩō	-ērē	pēpērĩ	partum	<i>bring forth.</i>

(9) 9. Also Perf. parsi

Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	
11. Cādō	-ērē	cēcīdī	cāsum	<i>fall.</i>
12. Cānō	-ērē	cēcīnī	cantum	<i>sing.</i>
13. Pangō	-ērē	pēpīgī	pactum	<i>fasten.</i>
14. Tangō	-ērē	tētīgī	tactum	<i>touch.</i>
15. Caedō	-ērē	cēcīdī	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill.</i>
16. Pellō	-ērē	pēpūlī	pulsum	<i>drive.</i>
17. Tollō	-ērē	sustūlī	sublātum	<i>take up.</i>
18. Compounds of dō :				
Abdō	-ērē	abdidī	abditum	<i>hide.</i>
Addō	-ērē	addidī	additum	<i>add.</i>
Condō	-ērē	condidī	conditum	<i>found, hide.</i>
Crēdō	-ērē	crēdidī	crēditum	<i>believe.</i>
Dēdō	-ērē	dēdidī	dēditum	<i>give up.</i>
Ēdō	-ērē	ēdidī	ēditum	<i>give forth, utter</i>
Perdō	-ērē	perdidī	perditum	<i>lose.</i>
Prōdō	-ērē	prōdidī	prōditum	<i>betray.</i>
Reddō	-ērē	reddidī	redditum	<i>restore.</i>
Subdō	-ērē	subdidī	subditum	<i>substitute.</i>
Trādō	-ērē	trādidī	trāditum	<i>deliver.</i>
Vendō	-ērē	vendidī	venditum	<i>sell.</i>
19. Reduplicated from stō :				
Sistō	-ērē	-stitī	-stātum	<i>make to stand.</i>

-ī with lengthened Stem-vowel, -tum (three -sum).

(10)	1. Fācō	-ērē	fēcī	factum	<i>make.</i>
	2. Jācō	-ērē	jēcī	jactum	<i>throw.</i>
	3. Līnquō	-ērē	liquī	lictum	<i>leave.</i>
	4. Vīncō	-ērē	vīcī	victum	<i>conquer.</i>
	5. Āgō	-ērē	ēgī	actum	<i>do.</i>
	6. Frangō	-ērē	frēgī	fractum	<i>break.</i>
	7. Lēgō	-ērē	lēgī	lectum	<i>choose, read.</i>
	8. Fūgō	-ērē	fūgī	fūgitum	<i>fly.</i>
	9. Ēdō	-ērē	ēdī	esum	<i>eat.</i>
	10. Fōdō	-ērē	fōdī	fossum	<i>dig.</i>
	11. Fundō	-ērē	fūdī	fūsum	<i>pour.</i>
	12. Cāpō	-ērē	cēpī	captum	<i>take.</i>
	13. Rumpō	-ērē	rūpī	ruptum	<i>break.</i>
	14. Ēmō	-ērē	ēmī	emptum	<i>buy, take.</i>

-ī, -sum.

(11)	1. Findō	-ērē	fīdī	fissum	<i>cleave.</i>
	2. Scindō	-ērē	scīdī	scissum	<i>tear.</i>

-ī, -sum (one -tum).

(12)	1. -candō	-ērē	-cendī	-censum	<i>set on fire.</i>
	2. -fendō	-ērē	-fendī	-fensum	<i>strike.</i>
	3. Pandō	-ērē	pandī	pansum	<i>spread.</i>
	4. Prēhendō	-ērē	prēhendī	prēhensum	<i>grasp.</i>
	5. Scandō	-ērē	scandī	scansum	<i>climb.</i>
	6. Vertō	-ērē	vertī	versum	<i>turn.</i>
	7. Bibō	-ērē	bībī	bībītum	<i>drink.</i>
	8. Vellō	-ērē	velli, vulsī	vulsum	<i>rend.</i>

B. U-verbs: -ī, -tum.

	Present.	Infīn.	Perfect.	Supīne.	
(13) 1.	Acūō	-ērē	ācūī	ācūtum	<i>sharpen.</i>
2.	Argūō	-ērē	argūī	argūtum	<i>prove.</i>
3.	Exūō	-ērē	exūī	exūtum	<i>put off.</i>
4.	Imbūō	-ērē	imbūī	imbūtum	<i>tinge.</i>
5.	Indūō	-ērē	indūī	indūtum	<i>put on.</i>
6.	Lūō	-ērē	lūī	lūtum	<i>wash, atone.</i>
7.	Mētūō	-ērē	mētūī	—	<i>fear.</i>
8.	Mīnūō	-ērē	mīnūī	mīnūtum	<i>lessen.</i>
9.	Nūō	-ērē	nūī	—	<i>nod.</i>
10.	Rūō	-ērē	rūī	rūtum	<i>rush, fall.</i>
11.	Stātūō	-ērē	stātūī	stātūtum	<i>set up.</i>
12.	Trībūō	-ērē	trībūī	trībūtum	<i>assign.</i>
13.	Solvō	-ērē	solvī	sōlūtum	<i>loosen.</i>
14.	Volvō	-ērē	volvī	vōlūtum	<i>roll.</i>

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Character I: Audī- rē).

Usual Form :	-iō	-irē	-ivī	-itum
	Audīō	-irē	audivī	audītum

Exceptions.

-ūī or ivī. -tum.

(1) 1.	Apērīō	-irē	āpērūī	āpertum	<i>open.</i>
2.	Ōpērīō	-irē	ōpērūī	ōpertum	<i>cover.</i>
3.	Sālīō	-irē	sālūī	(-sultum)	<i>leap.</i>
4.	Sēpēlīō	-irē	sēpēlivī	sēpultum	<i>bury.</i>

-sī, -tum (one -sum).

(2) 1.	Fulcīō	-irē	fulsī	furtum	<i>prop.</i>
2.	Sanēīō	-irē	sanxī	sanctum	<i>consecrate.</i>
3.	Vincīō	-irē	vinxī	vinctum	<i>bind.</i>
4.	Haurīō	-irē	hausī	haustum	<i>draw.</i>
5.	Sentiō	-irē	sensī	sensum	<i>feel.</i>

-ī, -tum.

(3) 1.	Compērīō	-irē	compērī	compertum	<i>find.</i>
2.	Rēpērīō	-irē	reppērī	rēpertum	<i>discover.</i>
3.	Vēnīō	-irē	vēnī	ventum	<i>come.</i>

V. DEPONENT VERBS.

1) FIRST CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ātus).

(2) SECOND CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītus).

Exceptions.

Present.	Infín.	Part. Perf.	
1. Fātēōr	-ēri	fassūs	<i>confess.</i>
2. Misērēōr	-ēri	misertūs or misērītūs	<i>have pity on.</i>
3. Rēōr	-ēri	rātūs	<i>think.</i>

(3) THIRD CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -tūs or -sūs).

	Present.	Infín.	Part. Perf.	
(a) 1. Fungōr		-ī	functūs	<i>perform.</i>
2. Amplectōr		-ī	amplexūs	<i>embrace.</i>
3. Nitōr		-ī	nīsūs or nixūs	<i>strive.</i>
4. Pātior		-ī	passūs	<i>suffer.</i>
5. Ūtōr		-ī	ūsūs	<i>use.</i>
6. Grādīōr		-ī	gressūs	<i>step.</i>
7. Lābōr		-ī	lapsūs	<i>glide.</i>
8. Mōriōr		-ī	mortūūs	<i>die.</i>
9. Quērōr		-ī	questūs	<i>complain.</i>
10. Frūōr		-ī	frūītūs	<i>enjoy.</i>
11. Lōquōr		-ī	lōcūtūs	<i>speak.</i>
12. Sēquōr		-ī	sēcūtūs	<i>follow.</i>
(b) 1. Āpiscōr		-ī	aptūs	<i>obtain.</i>
2. Commīniscōr		-ī	commentūs	<i>devise.</i>
3. Expergiscōr		-ī	experrectūs	<i>wake up.</i>
4. Fātiscōr		-ī	fessūs	<i>grow weary.</i>
5. Irascōr		-ī	irātūs	<i>be angry.</i>
6. Nanciscōr		-ī	nactūs	<i>obtain.</i>
7. Naseōr		-ī	nātūs	<i>be born.</i>
8. Obliviscōr		-ī	oblītūs	<i>forget.</i>
9. Pāciscōr		-ī	pactūs	<i>bargain.</i>
10. Prōficiiscōr		-ī	prōfectūs	<i>set out.</i>
11. Ulciscōr		-ī	ultūs	<i>avenge.</i>

(4) FOURTH CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

Exceptions.

1. Assentiōr	-īri	assensūs	<i>agree to.</i>
2. Expēriōr	-īri	expertūs	<i>try.</i>
3. Mētiōr	-īri	mensūs	<i>measure.</i>
4. Oppēriōr	-īri	oppertūs	<i>wait for.</i>
5. Ordiōr	-īri	orsūs	<i>begin.</i>
6. Oriōr	-īri	ortūs	<i>rise.</i>

Note. Inceptive Verbs form the Perfect and Supine as their Primitives : ingēmīscō (from gēmō), ingēmī, ingēmītum. Many Verbs are without Perfect ; more still without Supine.

PARTICLES.

A. ADVERBS. (See p. 127.)

§ 82. I. ADVERBS OF PLACE: The Interrogatives are:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| (1) Ůbĩ, <i>where?</i> | (4) Undě, <i>whence?</i> |
| (2) Quō, <i>whither?</i> | (5) Quā, <i>which way?</i> |
| (3) Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i> | (6) Quātěnũs, quōsque, <i>how far?</i> |

II. ADVERBS OF TIME: The Interrogatives are:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Quandō, ůbĩ, <i>when?</i> | (2) Quamdĩũ, <i>how long?</i> |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|

III. ADVERBS OF NUMBER: Interrogative Quōtĩens, *how often?*IV. ADVERBS OF MANNER: quomodo, *how*, &c.; CAUSE, cur, quare, *why*, &c.Many are derived from Adjectives, and end in ě, těr; pulchrě *finely*; mĩsěřě, *wretchedly*; fortĩtěr, *bravely*; sũpĩentěr, *wisely*.

Note. Adverbs of Negation are nōn, haud, not. See p. 141.

B. PREPOSITIONS. (See p. 142).

§ 83. The following Prepositions take the Accusative Case.

Ad, <i>to, at, &c.</i>	Juxtā, <i>adjoining to, beside.</i>
Adversũs } <i>toward, against.</i>	Ůb, <i>over against, by reason of.</i>
Adversum }	Pěněs, <i>in the power of.</i>
Antě, <i>before.</i>	Pěr, <i>through.</i>
Apũd, <i>at, in, among.</i>	Pōně, <i>behind.</i>
Circum, <i>around.</i>	Post, <i>after, behind.</i>
Circā, circĩtěr, <i>about.</i>	Praetěr, <i>beside.</i>
Cis, cĩtrā, <i>on the near side of.</i>	Prōpě, <i>near, prōpiũs, proximě.</i>
Contrā, <i>against, over against.</i>	Proptěr, <i>nigh, on account of.</i>
Ergā, <i>towards.</i>	Sēcundum, <i>next, along, according to.</i>
Extrā, <i>outside of, out of.</i>	Sũprā, <i>above.</i>
Infrā, <i>below.</i>	Trans, <i>across.</i>
Intěr, <i>between, among, amidst.</i>	Ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>
Intrā, <i>within.</i>	Versũs, Versum, <i>towards.</i>

The following take the Ablative Case.

Ā, āb, abs, <i>by, from.</i>	Ex, ě, <i>out of, from.</i>
Absquě (rare), <i>without.</i>	Pālam, <i>in sight of.</i>
Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.*</i>	Prae, <i>before, owing to, compared with.</i>
Cōram, <i>in the presence of.</i>	Prō, <i>before, for, instead of.</i>
Cum, <i>with.</i>	Sĩně, <i>without.</i>
Dě, <i>down from, from, concerning.</i>	Těnũs, <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

Note. Cum is attached to the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns; mēcum, nōbiscum, tēcum, vōbiscum, sēcum, quēcum, or quicūm, quibuscūm.

* Clam also takes Accusative

The following take the Accusative or the Ablative.

Īn, into, against (Acc.), *in, upon, among* (Abl.). *Sŭpĕr, over, upon.*
Sŭb, up to, under (Acc.), *under* (Abl.). *Subtĕr, under.*

Īn and *sŭb* with Accusative imply motion; with Ablative, rest.

II. The Prepositions and Particles compounded with Verbs are:—

A. Prepositions:—*ā* (āb, abs), *ād*, *antĕ*, *circum*, *con* (for *cum*), *dĕ*, *ex* (*ĕ*), *in*, *intĕr*, *ōb*, *pĕr*, *post*, *prae*, *praetĕr*, *prō*, *sŭb*, *subtĕr*, *sŭper*, *trans*.

B. Inseparable Particles:—*ambī-* (amb-), *around, about*; *dis-*, *di-*, *in different parts or ways*; *rĕ-*, *back, again*; *sĕ-*, *apart*.

Note 1. Prepositions in composition suffer various changes; such as, *combībō* for *conbībō*, *offendō* for *obfendō*, *trādūcō* for *transdūcō*.

Note 2. Many Verbs in Composition suffer vowel-change:

(1) *a* into *e*, *spargō*, *dispergō*; (2) *a* into *u*, *quātīlō*, *conciūtīlō*; (3) *a* into *i*, *āgō*, *exīgō*; (4) *e* into *i*, *rĕgō*, *dīrī-ō*; (5) *ae* into *i*, *quaerō*, *acquirō*.

Add to these, *claudō*, *exclūdō*, &c.; *plaudō*, *supplūdō*, &c.; and *audiō*, *obœdiō*.
 See p. 124, II.

C. CONJUNCTIONS. (See p. 129.)

§ 84. CONJUNCTIONS are—

1. Coordinative, or those which join words and sentences but do not affect Mood: *ĕt*, *quĕ*, *ac*, *atquĕ* (*and*), *aut*, *vĕl*, *vĕ* (*either, or*), *sĕd*, *autem* (*but*), *nam*, *ĕnim* (*for*), &c.
2. Subordinative, or those which join sentences, influencing Mood: *ūt* (*that*), *nĕ* (*lest*), *quōd*, *quīā* (*because*), *quum* (*when, since*), *sī* (*if*), *nīſī*, *nī* (*unless*), &c., &c.

§ 85. The Interrogative Particles cannot be rendered in English without the Verbs, to which they impart an Interrogative force:—

They are, the enclitic *-nĕ*, *ān*, *num*, *ŭtrum* (*whether*): the compounds of the last three with *-nĕ*; namely, *annĕ*, *numnĕ*, *ŭtrumnĕ*; and the compounds of *ān*, *-nĕ*, with the negative; namely, *annōn*, *nonnĕ*.

D. INTERJECTIONS.

§ 86. An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used either to draw attention, or to express feeling of some kind. The most usual Interjections are—

O, O!	oh!	Prō,	forbid it!
A, alas!		Vae,	woe!
Eheu,	} alas!	Ēn,	} lo! behold!
Heu, ei,		Eccĕ,	

Note. Of these, *ō*, *ā*, *ēheu*, *heu*, *prō*, may be used with a Vocative Case; the same, as well as *ĕn*, *eccĕ*, with a Nominative or Accusative: *ei. vae*, with a Dative.

SYNTAX.

PREFATORY EXCURSION.

§ 87. A. A Simple Sentence is the expression of a single thought :

Psittacus loquitur,
The parrot speaks.

Psittacus non loquitur,
The parrot does not speak.

B. That of which something is said, is called the Subject :

Psittacus, *the parrot.*

a. The Subject must be a Substantive, or a Noun-term which can take its place, as an Adjective, Pronoun, Infinitive, or Clause.

C. The Finite Verb, which declares what is said of the Subject, and makes a complete sense, is called the Predicate: Loquitur, *speaks.*

a. Since Pronoun Subjects are implied in the Endings (§ 44 Obs.), a single Verb may be a sentence :

Veni,

I came,

Vidi,

I saw,

Vici,

I conquered.

D. Any Finite part of the Verb sum (essē), to be, is usually a Cōpulă, or Link; and a word linked by it to the Subject, and completing the sense, is called a Complement; both together forming the Predicate:

Subject.	Predicate.	
	Copula.	Complement.
Hōmō	est	mortalis,
<i>Man</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>mortal.</i>
Hōminēs	sunt	animaliā,
<i>Men</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>animals.</i>

Note. The Copula is often omitted: Rari boni, (*good men are few*).

a. Other Verbs besides sum link a Subject and Complement, and are called Copulative (Link) Verbs: fiō, *become*; nascōr, *am born*; vidēōr, *seem*; dicōr, *am said*; vocōr, *am called*; putōr, *am thought*, &c.

E. An Adjective agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Attribution, and may be (1) Epithet; (2) Attributive Complement.

(1) Docti viri,
Learned men.

(2) Hi viri sunt docti,
These men are learned.

F. A Substantive agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Apposition, and may be (1) Epithetic; (2) Appositive Complement.

(1) Rex Croesus,
King Croesus.

(2) Croesus fuit rex,
Croesus was king.

SYNTAXIS MEMORIALIS PRIMA.

DE CONGRUENTIA.

REGULAE QUATTUOR GENERALES.

§ 88. I. Verbum Finitum cum Nōminatīvō Subjecti congruit
nūmērō et persōnā:

Māgistēr dōcēt.
Lībrī lēguntūr.

Tū dōcēs: nōs discimūs
Discērē est tīlē.

§ 89. II. Adjectivum gēnērē, nūmērō, et cāsū congruit cum
cō cui attribuitur:

Vīr bōnūs illē bōnam hanc uxōrem hābēt.
Hīrundō pullis suis orbātā quēritūr.
Cārī sunt pārentēs; cārā est patriā.
Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.

§ 90. III. Substantivum cāsū congruit cum eō cui appō-
nītūr:

Nōs pūērī pātrē Lollīum imitābimūr.
Effōdiuntūr opēs, irritāmentā mālōrum.
Spēs est expectātiō bōnī.
Syllābā longā brevī subjectā vocātūr Iambus.

§ 91. IV. Rēlātivum cum Antēcēdentē congruit gēnērē,
nūmērō, et persōnā; sēd cāsū spectāt sūam clausulam:

Dēum vērēramūr quī nōs creāvit.
Amicūs est, quem amāmūs, ā quō amāmūr.
Amō tē, mātēr, quae mē amās.

DE SUBJECTO COMPOSITO.

§ 92. Cum Subjectō Compōsitō plūrālī congruunt:
Vēnēnō absumpti sunt Hannībāl et Philōpoemēn.

1. In diversitātē persōnārum Verbū congruunt cum Priōrē
Persōnā:

Si tū et Tulliā vālētis, ēgō et Cīcērō vālēmūs.



2. In diversitate genarum Adjectivă congruunt cum Masculô pötius quam cum Fëmininô:

Pätër mîhî ęt mätër mortuû sunt.

α. Rebûs inänimis attribuitur sacpë genûs Neutrû:
Divitiae, decûs, gloriâ in oculis sita sunt.

DE CASIBUS.

DE CASIBUS SUBJECTI ET COMPLEMENTI. § 87.

§ 93. (1) Finitî Verbî Subjectum Nöminativûs est:
Annî fûgiunt.

(2) Infinitivî Subjectum in Accusativô pönitur:
Constät annôs fûgërë. | Scimûs annôs fûgërë.

§ 94. Verbă Cöplativă, sivë Finită sivë Infinitivă, Complementum plerumquë cum Subjectô congruens häbent:

<i>Vitâ est somnium.</i>		<i>Nëmô nascitur sapiens.</i>
<i>Vitâ dicitur esse somnium.</i>		<i>Nëmô pötest nasci sapiens.</i>
Aiunt vitam esse somnium.		
Constät neminem nasci sapientem.		

α. Accusativî cum Infinitivô constructiö vocatur Enunciatiö Obliquă.

DE ACCUSATIVO.

§ 95. Accusativûs est Cäsûs Pröpiöris Objecti. Necnön limitandi vim häbët.

I. ACCUSATIVUS OBJECTI.

§ 96. Verbă Transitiivă regunt Accusativum Objecti:
Mätër älit pullôs. | In primis vënerärë Dëum.

§ 97. Intransitiivă cäpiunt Accusativum vi cognatâ:
Düram servit servitütë.
Claudiûs äläam lûsit.



§ 98. Verbā quaedam *rōgandī* praesertim ēt *dōcendī*, bīnōs admittunt Accūsātīvōs, altērum Rēi, altērum Pēsonae :

Nunquam *divitiās dēōs rōgāvi*.
Quid nunc *tē littērās dōcēam*?

§ 99. Verbā quaedam *fāciendī*, *vōcandī*, *pūtandī*, similiā, bīnōs hābent Accūsātīvōs, altērum Objectī, altērum obliqui Complēmentī :

Tē faciūmus, *Fortūnā, dēam*.
Rōmūlūs urbem suā Rōmam vōcāvīt.

II. ACCUSATIVUS LIMITATIONIS.

§ 100. Accūsātīvūs Respectūs adjungitūr Verbīs ēt Adjectivīs, praesertim āpūd pōētās :

Trēmīt artūs. | *Nūdae sunt lācertōs*.

§ 101. Lōcūs, *Quō* itūr, in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr, idquē sinē Praepōsitiōnē, si vėl oppīdi nōmēn est, vėl *dōmūs, rūs* :

Rēgūlūs Carthāginem rēdiit.
Vōs itē dōmum: ēgō *rūs* ibō.

§ 102. (1) Dūrātiō Tempōris in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :

Pēriclēs quādrāgintā annōs praefūit Athēnis.

(2) Mensūrā Spātīi in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :

Ērant mūrī Bābylōnīs dūcēnōs pēdēs ultī.

§ 103. Accūsātīvum rēgunt multae Praepōsitiōnēs : § 83.

Antē, āpūd, ad, adversūs,
Circum, circā, citrā, cīs,
Contrā, intēr, ergā, extrā,
Infrā, intrā, juxtā, ob,
Pēnēs, pōnē, post, ēt praetēr,

Prōpē, propiēr, pēr, sēcundum,
Sūprā, versūs, ultrā, trans ;
His sūpēr, subtēr, additō,
Et in, sub, si fīt mōtiō.

DE DATIVO.

§ 104. Dātīvūs est Cāsūs Rēcipientis seu Rēmōtiōris Objectī.

§ 105. I. Trājectivā, quae sensum trājiciunt ad Rēmōtiūs Objectum, sunt multā Adjectivā, Adverbīā, ēt Verbā, rārīūs Substantivā, quībūs indicātūr

Prōpinqūtās ēt Dēmōstrātiō,
Grātificātiō, Dōmīnātiō,
Et his contrāriā quaequē nōtiō.



§ 106. Trăjectivă căpiunt Dătivum, quum significantur

(1) Pröpinquitās ē contrariā :

Est finitimus oratori poetā.
Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.
Congruenter naturae vivendum est.
Praesentia confert practeritis.
Nec tamen ignorat quid distent aera lupinis.

(2) Dēmonstratiō ē contrariā :

Dic mihi, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?
Anguis Sullae apparuit immolanti.
Haud cuiquam in dubio erat bellum imminere.

(3) Grātificatiō ē contrariā :

Patriae sit idoneus, utilis agris.
Turbā gravis paci placidaeque inimicā quieti.
Quod alii donat sibi destrahit.
Lucem reddet tuae, dux bone, patriae.
Nobis spondet fortunā salutem.
Ne libeat tibi quod nemini licet.
Parce pio generi.
Succensere nefas patriae.
Resistendum est appetitibus.

(4) Dōminatiō ē contrariā :

Sapiens, sibi qui imperiosus.
Omnibus supplex est.
Imperat aut servit collectā pecuniā cuique.
Mundus Deo parat, et huic obediunt maria terraeque.

a. Intēr Trăjectivă sunt multă Verbă compōsită cum Particulis, quales sunt

Bene, male, satis, re,
Ad, ante, contra, in, inter, de,
Ob, sub, super, post, et prae:

Ceteris satisfactio semper, mihi numquam
Sicilia quondam Italiae adhaesit.
Gigantes bellum deis intulerunt.
Anatum ova gallinis supponimus.

§ 107. II. Dătivus ubivis adjungi potest cum notione quamdam Commodi vel Incommodi:

Esto, ut nunc multi, dives tibi, pauper amicis.
Numa virginēs Vestae legit.
Venus nupsit Vulcano.
Philosophiae semper vacat.

a. Huc refert Dătivum Pronominis, qui vocatur ethicus:

Quid mihi Celsus agit?

b. *Sum cum compōsītis, praetēr possum, cāpīt Dātīvum.*

Sum tibi Mercūrius.
Vir mihi semper ābest.

c. *Est, sunt, cum Dātīvō, habērē saepē significāt:*

Est hōmīnī cum Dēō similitūdō.
Sunt nobis mītiā pōma.

d. Adjungītūr idem Dātīvūs Partīcīpiis ēt Partīcīpiālībūs Passivae Vōcīs, praesertim Gērundivīs:

Magnus eivīs ōbit et formidātūs Ōlhōnī.
Multīs illē bōnīs flēbilīs oceidit.
Lēgendae sunt pūērīs Aesōpī fābūlae.

§ 108. III. Dātīvūs Prōpōsīti prō Complēmentō pōnītūr, adjunctō saepē Dātīvō Rēcīpiētīs:

Nimīā fiduciā cālāmītātī sōlēt essē.
Exilio est āridum mārē nauis.

§ 109. IV. Dātīvūs Complēmentī pēr Attractiōnem pōnītūr, praesertim in nōmīnandī formūlis:

Licūt Thēmistōclī essē ōtiosō.
Huic ēgō dīēi nōmēn Trīnummō faciām.

DE ABLATIVO.

§ 110. Ablātīvūs est Cāsūs rērum quae circumstant ēt adverbīālī mōrē limitant actiōnem. Dēfīnīt etiām Tempūs ēt Lōcum.

§ 111. I. Ablātīvūs Causae:

Ōderunt peccārē bōnī virtūtīs āmōre.
Coeplīs immānībūs effērā Didō.

§ 112. II. Ablātīvūs Instrūmentī:

Hī jaccūlis, illī certant dēfendērē saxīs.

§ 113. III. Ablātīvūs Mōdi:

Injuriā fīt duōbūs mōdis, aut vī aut fraudē.

§ 114. IV. Ablātīvūs Conditiōnis:

Parē tuā cum Thāidē collōquār.
Hōmō mēū sententiā prūdētissimūs est.



§ 115. V. Ablativus Qualitatis, cum Epithetō :

Quā faciē fuit, cui deditis symbolum?
Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrendū cāpillō.

§ 116. VI. Ablativus Respectus :

Angōr animō.
Ennius ingēniō maximus, artē rūdis.

§ 117. VII. Ablativus Prētii :

Ēgō spem prētīō nōn emō.
Quōd nōn opus est, assē cārum est.

§ 118. VIII. Ablativus Mensurae :

Longum sesquipedē, lātum pedē est.
Sōl multis partibūs mājōr est quam lūnā.
Tantō pessimus omnium poētā,
Quantō tu optimus omnium patrōnus.

§ 119. IX. Ablativus Matēriae :

Cibūs eōrum lactē, cāsēō, carnē constat.

a. Ablativum regunt: (1) Verba *fungōr, frūōr, utōr, vescōr, pōtior, dignōr*; (2) Adjectivā *dignus, indignus, contentus, frētus, praeditus*; (3) Substantivā *opus, usus* :

- (1) *Fungar vicē cōtis.*
Hannibāl, cum victōriā possēt uti, frūi māluit.
Rex impius aurō vī pōtitur. § 133.
- (2) *Dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētat mōrī.*
- (3) *Ūbi rēs adsunt, quid opus est verbis?*
Ūsus est filiō viginti minis.

b. Ex Adjectivis et Verbis *abundandi* vel *egendi, ditandi* vel *privandi*, plerāque Ablativum capiunt, multā etiam Gēn. tīvum :

Amor et mellē et fellē est fecundissimū.
Nunquam animus mōtū vācūus est.
Vis consili expers mōlē ruit sūa.
Mancipius locū plēs ēgēt aeris Cappadocum rex.
Vācārē culpā maximum est solācium.

§ 120. X. Ablativus Tempōris respondēt, si rōgātūr *Quandō* ?
Intrā quantum tempus? Quantō tempōrē antē vel post?

Hīemē omniā bellā conquiescunt.
Quidquid est biduō sciēmūs.
Hōmērūs annis multis fuit antē Rōmūlum.

§ 121. XI. A. Ablativus Locī pōnitūr sinē Praepōsitiōne,
 cum rōgātūr, *Quā viā?*

Ibam fortē Viā Sācrā.

B. Ablatīvūs saepē cārēt Praepōsitiōnē, eum rōgātūr *Ūbi?* maxīmē, sī oppīdī nōmēn est, vėl sī stāt cum Ēpithētō:

Philippūs *Nēāpōlī* est, Lentūlūs *Pūlēōlīs*.
Tābernae *tōtā urbē* elauduntūr.

a. Oppīdōrum nōmīnā singulārīā ex Declinātiōnē primā ēt sēcundā lōeum stātīōnīs dēfīniunt pēr eāsūs īn *ae, ī*:

Quid *Rōmae* faciām? | Īs hābītāt *Mīlēī*.

b. Sīmīlīā sunt *hūmī, dōmī, bellī, milītīae, rūrī*:

Caesāris virtūs *dōmī milītīaeque* cognītā est.

C. Ablatīvūs oppīdī Praepōsitiōnē cārēt, eum rōgātūr *Undē?*

Dēmārātūs fūgīt *Cōrīnthō*.

a. Itā *dōmō, rūrē*. (Dē Accūsātīvō Lōcī *Quō* itūr, v. § 101.)

§ 122. XII. Ablatīvum rēgunt vāriac Praepōsitiōnēs:

<i>A, āb, absque, cōram, dē,</i>		<i>His sūpēr, subtēr, sūb addē-</i>
<i>Pālam, clam, cum, ex, et ē,</i>		<i>mūs,</i>
<i>Sinē, tēnūs, prō, ēt prae:</i>		<i>Ēt īn, dē stātū sī dicēmūs.</i>

a. Praepōsitiōnēs ētīam compōsītae rēgunt Ablatīvum, praesertim *āb, dē, ex*:

Quīnetiūs *dictātūrā sē abdīcāvīt*.
Dētrūdunt nāvēs *scōpūlō*.

b. Ablatīvūs Āgentīs expētīt Praepōsitiōnem *ā, āb*:

Laudātūr *āb his*, culpātūr *āb illīs*.

§ 123. XIII. Ablatīvūs Sēpārātiōnīs ēt Orīgīnīs ētīam sinē Praepōsitiōnē Verbīs ēt Partīcīplīs adjungītūr:

Cēdēs cōemptīs *saltībūs* et *dōmō*.
Pēlōpē nātūs, *Tantālō* prognātūs est.

§ 124. XIV. Ablatīvūs Rēī Compārātae:

(1) Prō *quam* eum Nōmīnātīvō:

Nihil est *āmābiliūs virtūtē*.
Villūs argentum est *aurō, virtūtībūs aurum*.

(2) Prō *quam* cum Accūsātīvō:

Pūtō mortem *dēdēcōrē lēviōrem*.
Nēmīnem *Lycurgō* *ūtīlīōrem* Spartā gēnūit.

§ 125. XV. Substantīvum cum Partīcīpō cōalescit In Ablatīvō, quī vōcātūr Absōlūtūs:

Rēgībūs exactīs consūlēs crēātī vānt.

a. Prō Particīpiō saepē supplētūr altērum Substantivum
vĕl Adjectivum :

Nīl despērāndum Teucrō *dūce* et *auspicē* Toucrō.
Nātūs est Augustūs *consulībūs* Cicerōnē et Antōniō.
Jamquē cinis, *vivīs* frātrībūs, Hectōr erat.
Quīd dicam, *hāc* jūventūtē?

DE GENITIVO.

§ 126. Gēnitivūs, Cāsūs Possidentis, nōminā plērumquō
dēfīnit subjectivē vĕl objectivē.

A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS.

§ 127. I. Gēnitivūs Auctōris et Possessōris.

Pōlyclētī signā plānē perfectā sunt.
Singulōrum opēs sunt divitiāe civitatīs.
Omniā, quae *mūliēris* fūērunt, viri fiunt.
Eā stātūā dicēbātūr *Mýronīs*.

a. Interdum Gēnitivūs pendēt ā suppressā vocē :

Hectōris Andrōmachē (supplē *uxōr*).
Ventum ērat ad *Vestae* (supplō *templum*).

b. Gēnitivūs itā stāt, ūt supplērī possit

indolēs, *indiciūm*,
mūnūs aut *officiūm* :

Cūjusvis *hōmīnis* ost errārē.
Est *adōlescētis* mājorēs nātū vērērī.
Tempōrī cēdērē hābēt ūr *sāpientis*.

§ 128. II. Gēnitivūs Quālitātis, cum Ēpithētō :

Ingēnū voltūs pūēr *ingēnū*quē pūdōris.
Claudiūs ērat *sonnī* brēvissimī.

a. Nōtentūr elliptici Gēnitivī, *parvī*, *mīnōris*, *mīnimī*, *magnī*,
plūris, *plūrimī*, *tantī*, *quantī*, *maximī*, quibūs supplē *prētī* :

Vōluptātem virtūs *mīnimī* faciūt.
Ēmit hortōs *tantī* *quantī* Pýthiūs vōlūit.

§ 129. III. *Intērest*, *rēfert*, Gēnitivum admittunt :

Intērest *omnīum* rectē faciērē.
Rēfert *compōsitiōnīs* quae quibūs antēpōnās.

a. Eādem prō Gēnitivis Prōnōmīnum ūsurpant hōs cāsūs,
mēā, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, cum *rē* congruentēs :

Ēt *tūā* et *mēā* *intērest* tē vālērō,
Quīd *nostrā* id *rēfert*?



§ 130. IV. A. Gēnītīvūs Rēi Distribūtae Partītivis adjungītūr, quae, quantum licēt, Gēnītīvi sūmunt gēnūs :

Ēlēphantō *bēlūarum* est nullā prūdētīor.
 Hōmīnī ūnī *ānīmāntīum* luctūs est dātūs.
 Sullā centum vigintī *sūōrum* āmisīt.
 Mājor *Nērōnum* mox grāvē proelīum commīsit.
Gallōrum fortissīmī sunt Belgae.
 Nēmō *mortālīum* omnībūs hōris sāpit.
Piscīum fēmīnae mājōrēs sunt quam mārēs.
 Sēquīmurtē, sanctō *dēōrum*.
 Hōc ad tē minimē *omnīum* pertīnēt.

a. *Nostrūm, vestrūm*, Partītivā sēquuntūr :

Tē vēnīrē ūterquē *nostrūm* cūpīt.

§ 131. B. Gēnītīvūs Rēi Dēmēnsae Vōcābulā Quantitātis et Neutrā Adjectīvā cōmītātūr :

Sātīs *ēlōquentīae, sūpientīae* pārum est.
 Aliquid pristīnī *rōbōris* conservāt.
 Quantum *nūmmōrum*, tantum *fīdēi* est.

B. GENITIVUS OBJECTIVUS.

§ 132. I. Gēnītīvūs objectīvē jungītūr Substantīvīs, Adjectīvīs, aut Partīcipīs, quībūs transītīvā quaedam vīs est, praesertīm sī significānt

Pēritūm, cūram, dēsīdērūm,
 Vēl quidquid ērīt hīs contrāriūm :

Insītūs est mentī *cognītiōnīs* āmor.
 Difficīlis est cūrā *rērum āliēnārum*.
 Tempūs edax *rērum* est.
 Corpūs pātiens *īnēdiāe* fūit.
 Consciā mens *rectī* est.
 Impēritūs *mōrum* fūit.
 Avidā est *pēriculī* virtūs.
 Animūs fūit *āliēnī* appētens, *sūi* prōfūsūs.

a. *Mēi, tūi, sūi, nostrī, vestrī*, objectīvē pōnuntūr; subjectīvē, *mēūs, tūūs, sūūs, nostrēr, vestēr* :

Niciās *tūā sūi* mēmōriā dēlectātūr.

(a) Gēnītīvūs Subjectīvūs īn Possessīvō lātens Gēnītīvum sībī congrūentem rēcipīt :

Respublicā *mēā ūnīūs* opērā salvā ērāt.
 Avēs fētūs *ādultōs sūae ipsōrum* fidūciāe permittunt

§ 133. II. Genitivus adiungitur Verbis et Adiectivis, quibus significatur

Potentia et impotentia, Damnatio, absolutio,
Criminatio, innocentia, Memoria et oblivio.

(1) Romani signorum potiti sunt. § 119 a.

Ira est impotens sui.

(2) Fraternalis est sanguinis insons.

Reus est injuriarum.

(3) Petilius furti absolutus est.

Condemnatus haereticus stultitiae.

(4) Res adversae admonent nos religionum.

Omnēs immemorem beneficium oderunt.

a. Memini, remniscor, recordor, obliviscor, Genitivum vel Accusativum admittunt:

Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.

Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.

§ 134. III. Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet atque miseret, Impersonalia, Genitivum capiunt cum Accusativo:

Miseret te aliorum: tu nec miseret nec pudet.

Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum paenitet.

§ 135. IV. Misericor, miseresco Genitivum capiunt; miseror, commiseror, Accusativum:

Arcadii, quaeso, miserescite regis.

Sortem miseratur Inquam.

§ 136. V. Genitivus a poetis libere usurpatur. Sed aeger animi, animi pendere, similia, etiam in soluta oratione comparent.

DE CASIBUS EXTRA SENTENTIAM.

§ 137. Vocativus extra sententiam stat vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione: § 86.

Oro te, fili (vel O fili).

§ 138. Nominativus et Accusativus in exclamando usurpantur vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione:

(1) Infandum!

Eccē novā turbā!

(2) Me miserum!

En quattuor arae!

§ 139. Ita Dativus ponitur cum ei! vae!:

Ei miserum mihi!

Vae victis!

DE VERBO INFINITO.

§ 140. I. Infinitivum stăt—

1. Substantivē, prō Nōminativō vėl Accūsativō:

- (1) *Invidērē* nōn cādīt in sāpiēm.
Dulce et dēcōrum est prō patriā *mōrī*.
(2) *Mōrī* nēmō sāpiēs misērum dixērīt.

2. Praedicativē, in narrandō, prō Verbō Finitō:

Multi *sēquī*, *fūgērē*, *occidī*, *cāpi*.

3. Obliquē, cum Accūsativō Subjecti. § 94.

4. Prōlātā constructiōnē Verbī vėl Adjectivī:

Sōlent diū *cōgītārē* quī magnā vōlunt *gērērē*.
Patriāe dicōris *essē* pāter.
Lūdum insōlentem *lūdērē* pertinax.

§ 141. II. Infinitivī Cāsūs sunt Gērundiā ēt Sūpinā.

1. Accūsativūs Gērundiī Praepōsitiōnibūs adjungitūr:

Ad bēnē *vivendum* brēvē tempūs sātīs est.

2. Gēnitivūs Gērundiī Substantivīs ēt Adjectivīs additūr:

Ars scribendi discitūr. | Cūpidūs *audiendi* est.

3. Dātivūs Gērundiī Nōminibūs et Verbīs additūr:

Pār est *dissērendō*. | Dāt ōpēram *lēgendō*.

4. Ablativūs Gērundiī causae vėl mōdi est aut Praepōsitiōnī jungitūr:

Fūgiendō vincimūs. | *Dē pugnandō* delibērant.

5. Sūpinum in *um* Accūsativūs est post Verbā mōtūs:

Lūsum it Maecēnās, *dormitum* ēgō.

a. *Īrī* cum Sūpinō efficit Infinitivum Fūtūrī Passivī:

Audiērāt nōn *dātum īrī* filiō uxōrem sūō.

6. Sūpinum in *ū* prō Ablativō Respectūs est:

Foedum *dictū* est. | Nēfās *vīsū* est.

§ 142. III. Infinitivum, cum Gērundiō, Partīcipiīs, ēt Sūpinō in *um*, ēōsdem cāsūs rēgit ac Verbum Finitum:

Cūpiō sātisfācērē *rēipublicae*.
Cūpidūs sum sātisfāciēdi *rēipublicae*.
Ausi omnēs immānē *nēfās* ausōquē pōtītī.
Ast ēgō nōn Grāis servitum *mātrībūs* ībō.

§ 143. În Gêrundiis Transîtivis ūsîtătîôr est Attractîo Gêrundi vâ; cûjûs constructîonis rêgûlă est haecce :

Trăhîtur Objectum în Gêrundi vî cāsum, Gêrundi vum în nûmêrum êt gēnûs Objecti :

Brûtûs în *libêrandă pătřiă* est interfectûs.

Hi septemvîri fûerunt *ăgrîs divîdendis*.

§ 144. IV. 1. Nêcessîtatem signîficăt Gêrundi vâ constructîo impersonălis, în Verbis pôtissîmum intransîtivis :

Bibendum est.

| *Êundum êrit.*

a. Huic addî pôtest Dătîvûs, rărîûs Ablătîvûs cum *ă*, *ab* :

Bîbendum est nobîs.

| *Vôbîs êundum êrit.*

b. Êt siquîs ăliûs cāsûs ă Verbô rêgîtûr :

Cîvîbûs est ă vôbîs consûlendum.

Sûo cuiquê jûdiciô est ûtendum.

Eudoxûs ôpinătûr Chaldaeîs minîmê essê crêdendum.

2. Nêcessîtatem signîficăt attribûtivă constructîo Gêrundi vî, în Verbis transîtivis :

Dêûs êt dilîgendûs est nobîs êt tîmendûs.

Nôn tangendă rătês transîliunt vādă.

DE PRONOMINIBUS.

§ 145. *Sê, sũs*, Rêflexivă Prônômînă, rêfêruntûr ăd sententîae princîpălis Subjectum, mōdô tertîae persōnae sît :

Sentît ănimûs sê vî sũă mōvêri.

a. Rêflexivă ăd Objectum rêferri possunt, sî ăă rêlătîo nihîl hăbêt ambîguî :

Scîpiônem impellit ostentătîo sũ.

Ăpîbûs fructum restîtuô sũm.

Mors sũă quemquê mănec.

DE PARTICULIS NONNULLIS.

§ 146. Multae Conjunctionês sîmîliă sîmîlibûs annectunt

Mîrătur portăs strêpîtumquê et strătă vîărûm.

Vîrtûs nec êrîpî nec surrîpî pôtest.

Nêmînem săpîentiôrem pătô quam Sôcrătem.

Omnê solum fortî pătria est, ut piscîbûs aequor.



§ 147. *Nē* prōhibītivā cum Impērātīvō Mōdō vėl cum Con-junctivō ūsurpātūr: *nēdum, ūtinam, ō si, ūt* prō ūtinam cum Con-junctivō:

Nē quā mēis estō dictīs mōrā.

Nē culpam in mē contūlērīs.

Neu dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.

Mortālīā factā pērībunt,

Nēdum sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax

Ūtinam mīnūs vitae cūpīdī fūissēm ūs.

Ō si urnam argenti fors quae mīhī monstrēt.

Ūt illum dī dēaequē perdant.

COMPENDIUM REGULARUM DE SUBJUNCTIVO.

§ 148. Mōdūs Con-junctivūs vārīs sensībūs *pūrē* ūsur-pātūr: quum *subjūgtūr* altērī Verbō, Sub-junctivūs appel-lātūr.

§ 149. Prōnōmīnā ēt Particūlae, quae obliquē interrōgant, Sub-junctivum postulant:

Ipsē quis sīt, ūtrum sīt, an nōn sīt, id quōquē nescit.

Taliā sunt:

Quantūs, ūter, quālis, quis, quot, quōtūs, unde, ūbī, quando,

Cūr, quōtīens, quārē, quam, quōmōdō, num, nē, ūt, ān, ūtrum.

§ 150. Rēlatīvum *quī*, cum Particūlis sūis, *undē, ūbī*, cētērīs, simplici sensū cāpīt Indicātivum: sī continētūr in *ēō quum, quamvis, ūt*, vėl *tālīs ūt*, Sub-junctivum:

Misērēt tūi mē, quī hunc *fācias* inīmīcum tibi.

Littērās mīsi quībūs *ēt plācārem* eūm *ēt mōnērem*.

Quīs est quī nōn *ōdērit* prōtervam pūritiām?

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs *intendās*.

§ 151. Rēlatīvum vėl Con-junctiō, sī sūbordinātūr ōrātiōni obliquae vėl rē vėl pōtestatē, Sub-junctivum postulāt:

Ennīūs nōn censēt lūgendam *essē* mortem, quam im-mortālītās *consequātūr*.

Sōcrātēs accūsātūs est quōd *corrumpērēt* jūventūtem.

a. Con-junctivō saepē sūbordinātūr Sub-junctivūs:

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd *rēcēpiarēt*.

§ 152. Conjunctionum Modos regentium Classēs sunt trēs.

I. Primā Classis est earum, quarum proprius est Subjunctivus:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(1) CONSECUTIVAE
 <i>Ūt (so that)</i>
 <i>Quin (but that)</i></p> | <p>(4) CONDITIONALES:
 <i>Dum</i>
 <i>Mōdō</i>
 <i>Dummōdō</i> } (<i>provided that</i>)</p> |
| <p>(2) FINALES:
 <i>Ūt (in order that)</i>
 <i>Nē (lest, that . . . not)</i>
 <i>Quō (in order that)</i>
 <i>Quōmīnūs (but that)</i></p> | <p>(5) CONCESSIVAE:
 <i>Licēt</i>
 <i>Quamvis</i>
 <i>Ūt</i> } (<i>although</i>)</p> |
| <p>(3) CAUSALIS:
 <i>Quum (since)</i></p> | <p>(6) COMPARATIVAE:
 <i>Tamquam</i>
 <i>Vēlūt, ceu</i>
 <i>Quāsi, &c.</i> } (<i>as if</i>)</p> |

II. Alterā Classis est earum quarum proprius est Indicativus, nisi subordinentur orationi obliquae vel re vel potestati:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(1) CAUSALES:
 <i>Quōd, quīā (because)</i>
 <i>Quōnīam (since)</i>
 <i>Quandōquidem (since)</i>
 <i>Siquidem (inasmuch as)</i></p> | <p><i>Simul (as soon as)</i>
 <i>Postquam (after that)</i>
 <i>Dum</i>
 <i>Dōnēc</i>
 <i>Quōād</i> } (<i>whilst, as long as</i>)</p> |
| <p>(2) TEMPORALES:
 <i>Quandō, quum, ubi (when)</i>
 <i>Ut (when, since)</i>
 <i>Quōtiens (as often as)</i></p> | <p>(3) CONCESSIVAE:
 <i>Quamquam (although however)</i>
 <i>Ūtūt (however)</i></p> |

III. Tertiā Classis est earum, quas aut Indicativus sequitur aut Subjunctivus, prout res aut vera aut cogitata proponitur.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(1) TEMPORALES:
 <i>Dum, dōnēc, quōād (until)</i>
 <i>Antē-quam</i>
 <i>Prīus-quam</i> } (<i>before that</i>)</p> | <p>(2) CONDITIONALES ET CONCESSIVAE:
 <i>Sī (if)</i>
 <i>Nīsī (unless)</i>
 <i>Etsī, etiāmsī, (although, even if)</i></p> |
|--|---|

§ 153. Idiōtismi sunt Lātini sērmōnis:

(1) Quum (when) sequentē Subjunctivō Imperfecti vel Pluperfecti:

Zēnōnem, quum Āthēnis essem, audīebam frēquentēr.
Dēcessit Agēsīlāus quum in portum vēnissēt.

(2) Dum (*whilst*) sēquentē Indicātīvō Praesentis, ētiam in obliquā sūbordinātiōnē ēt dē rē praeteritā :

Quem ardōrem studiū censētis fuisse in Archimēdē, qui,
dum in pulvērē quaedam *dēscribit* attentius, nē patriam
quidem captam esse senserit?

§ 154. Conjunctiō excidit aliquandō :

Philosophiae serviās oportet (supplē *ut*).

Quaeram justum sit necnē poema (supplē *utrum*).

Partem opere in tantō, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes (supplē *si*).

§ 155. Dē Consēcūtiōnē Tempōrum ēa est rēgūla, ut Primāriā Primāriis sūbordinentur, Histōricā Histōricis.

Exemplā ex Syntaxi rēpētantur.

REGULAE SUBSIDIARIAE DE CONGRUENTIA.

§ 156. (1) Adjectivā prō Substantivis pōnuntur :

Multā paupēri dēsunt, āvārō omniā.

(2) Infinitivā prō Substantivis pōnuntur :

Vivērē est vālērē.

(3) Clausulae prō Substantivis pōnuntur :

Crēdibilē est omniā consiliō fieri.

§ 157. Impersōnalis Verbī Nōminativūs nōn exstāt, nisi a Infinitivum vėl Clausulā est :

Pūdēt ēum facti (i. e. pūdōr pūdēt).

Quid āgitur? Stātūr (i. e. stātiō fit).

Taedēt ēadem audirē mīliens.

Magnī intērest ut tē vidēam.

§ 158. Vox intelligitūr ōmissā pēr Ellipsin :

Nihil bōnum nisi quōd hōrestum (bis intelligē est).

Perfundor gēlidā (intelligē āquā).

§ 159. Congrūentiā variātūr pēr Attractiōnem :

Nōn omnis errōr stultitiā est dicendā.

Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae cāpūt est.

§ 160. Congrūentiā cum sensū fit pēr Synchronis, praesertim apud pōētās :

Sūbēunt Tēgēaeā jūventūs . . . auxiliō tardī.

Ubi est is scēlūs, qui mē perdidit?

PROSODIAE COMPENDIUM.

- § 161. Dē Syllābārum Quantitatē dissērit,
Et dē Mētrōrum lēgibus, Prōsōdiā.

DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

REGULAE QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

- § 162. 1. Omnis Diphthongus contractāque Syllābā longa est.
2. Dant Dērivātis prōpriū Primāriā tempus.
3. Praevīā vōcālī vōcālis corrīpiētur.
4. Vōcālis fit longā sitū, cui consōnā substat
Altērā post ūnam; ut *tristis*: seu vōcē in eādē
J sūbīt, *x*, aut *z*; sic *Ājāx*, *āxis*, *Āmāzōn*.
a. Vōcālis dūbia est, quamvis brēvis ipsā sūā vī,
Quam sēquitur, liquīdā subjunctā, consōnā mūta:
Sic rectē *lūgūbrē* mēlos vel *lūgūbrē* dicēs.
b. *N* post *g* longam dat sempēr: ūt *agnūs* ēt *ignis*.
Nec minūs *m* post *g*; tēgmen quod monstrāt ēt āgmen.

DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

- § 163. 1. Plērāque prōducēs Mōnōsyllābā, quālīā *mē*, *vēr*.
2. Prōducuntūr in *A*; *frustrā*, *contrāque*, *pārāque*.
a. Accūsātīvōs et cāsūs excipē Rectōs:
Carminā Mūsā cūnit; rēsōnant *Āmāryllidā* silvae.
3. *E* brēvis in fine est: sic *lēgē*, *tīmēlē*, *cārērē*.
4. Prōducuntūr in *I*: *dicī*, *plēbīque*, *dōlīque*.
5. Prōducuntūr in *O*: *virgō*, *multōque*, *juvōque*.
6. Prōducuntūr in *Ū*: sic *tū*, *dictūque*, *dīūque*.
7. *Y* brēvis in fine est: sic dant *chēlŷ*, *Tiphŷ*, pōetae.
8. In *C* prōducuntūr, ūt *illic* (excipē *donēc*).
9. Corrīpē in *L*, *D*, *T*: sic *Hannībāl*, *illūd*, *āmāvit*.
10. *N* brēvis in fine est: sunt testēs *Ilīōn*, *agmēn*.

11. *R* brēvis in fine est: ceu *calcār, amābitūr, Hectōr*.
12. Prōdūcuntūr in *As*: ut *terrās* atquē *Mēnalcās*.
13. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ēs*, ut *sēdēs* atquē *vīdērēs*.
14. *Is* brēvis in fine est: ceu *dicērīs, ūtlīs, ensīs*.
 - a. Obliqui cāsūs plūrālēs excipiuntur,
 Ut *terrīs, volīs*; etiā personā sēcunda
 In primō nūmērō Quartae Praesentis, ūt *audīs*:
 Composita ā *vīs, sis*: *mālīs, nolīsque, vclīsque*.
15. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ōs*: ut *ventōs* atquē *sācerdōs*.
16. *Us* brēvis in fine est: testēs *ōpūs, intūs, amāmūs*.
 - a. Hinc Quartae cāsūs contractōs excipe, ūt *artūs*:
 Et quēis crescentis longa est pēnultimā cāsūs,
 Ut *tellūs incūsque, iuventūs* atquē *sēnectūs*.
17. *Ys* brēvis in fine est: testēs *chēlys, Ōthrys, Ērinys*.
Obs. Mōs rēgit Auctōrum tempus, si rēgūla dēfit.

DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

DEFINITIONES.

- § 164. Syllābā longā brēvī subjectā vocātūr Iambus . . . -
 Quod si longā brēvī praecesserit, ilē Trōchēus . . . -
 Spondēus binis fertur consistērē longis - -
 Dactylūs efficitur longā brēvibusquē dūabus . . . - -

DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

- § 165. 1. Scansio, | quam vāri|ā con|cinnant | artē Fī|gūrae,
 Distribū|it Ver|sum | prō rāti|ōnē Pē|dum.
2. A. Vōcālem ēlidet Sŷnāloepha in limītē vōcis,
 Si Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in liminē vōcis;
 ‘Phyllid’ am’ | ant’ ālī|ās.
 (prō Phyllidā, amō, antē.)
 3. B. Echhipsis Vōcālem atquē m dē limītē trūdet,
 Si Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in liminē vōcis;
 ‘ Ō cū|rās hōmīn’ | Ō quant’ | est in | rēbūs in|āne.
 (prō hōmīnum, quantum.)
 - a. Extrēma in dūbiis censētur syllābā versūa.

§ 166. VERSUS MEMORIALES DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA.

- I. In silvis *acer* est: *equus acer* Olympiā vineit.
Vocē canēs; *dūcē eja canēs*, nisi tempore *canēs*.
Clavā fērit: *clavus* firmat; *clavisque* recludit.
Ut placēas cōmīti, *mōrēs cōmēs* induc *cōmēs*.
Cōmoedi scēnam, *cōmēdōnēs* quaerit *cēnam*.
Consulē doctōrēs; sic tū *tibi consūlis* ipsi.
Bellandī cupidō nocuit suā saepe *cupidō*.
Carminā dicuntur, *Dōminō* dum templā *dicantur*.
Solvērē diffidit, *nōdum* quī *diffidit* ense.
Uxōrem dūcit vir; *nūbit* sponsā *māritō*.
Edūcāt hic *cātūlōs*, ut mox *edūcāt* in *aprōs*.
Sī tibi non est *aes*, *ēs* *īnops*, et *pingulā* nōn *ēs*.
Fallit saepe *frētum* *placidō* nimis *aequorē frētum*.
Sōl nūbēs fūgāt, et *fūgīt* irrepārabilē *tempus*.
Per quod quis peccat, *pēr idem* mox *plectitūr idem*
Difficilis lābōr est, *cūjus* sub *pondere lābor*.
Frons pūeri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem *linguā* *puellae*.
In campis lēpōrēs, in *libris* quaerē *lēpōrēs*.
Nōn licēt assē *mlū*, quī *mē* nōn *assē licētur*.
Mālo egō *mālā* *mēā* *bōnā* quam *mālā* *frangērē mālā*
Merx *vēnit*, *mercesque* *vēnit* *quacsitā lābōre*.
Mulcēt *āmans* *placidam*, dum *mulget*, *Silviā* *vaceam*.
Fēcēris *officium*, *mīsēris* *sī mīsēris* *aera*.
Nitērē, *parvē* *pūer*, *cūpiēs* *quicumquē nitēre*.
Oblitā *quae* *fucō* *rūbēt*, est *oblitā* *dēcōri*.
Occidit *illē dōlō* *turpī*, quem *occidit* *āmicus*.
Ōs (*ōris*) *mandat*, *sēd ōs* (*ossis*) *manditūr ōre*.
Uxōris *pārere* et *pārērē*, *pārārē* *māriti* est.
Pārentēs *pūerī* *faciunt* *gaudērē pārentēs*.
Lūdē pilā: *pilum* *torquētur*: *pilā* *cōlumna* est.
Prō *rēti* et *rēgiōnē* *plāga* est; *prō* *verbērē* *plāga*.
Sunt *civēs* *urbis* *pōpūlus*; *sed pōpūlus* *arbor*.
Prōrā *prior*, *puppis* *pars* *postēra*, *āt imā* *cārīna*.
Spondet *vas* (*vādīs*), *at vās* (*vāsīs*) *continēt* *escam*.
Vas *cāpūt*, *at* *nummōs* *tantum* *praes* *praestāt* *āmicē*.
Sī *cītūs* *irē* *vēlis*, *vēlis* *ōpūs* *omnībūs* *ūtī* est.

- II. *Fidē*, sēd antē *vīdē* : quī *fīdit*, nec *hēnē vīdit*,
Fallitūr : ipsē *vīdē* nē cāpiārē *fīdē*.
Consortēs fortūna ēadem, *sōciōs* lābōr idem,
Unum collēgās effīcīt offīciūm :
 At cārōs faciunt schōlā, lūdus, mensā, *sōdālēs* :
Suleūs āgrī lira est : dat *līrā* tactā mōdōs.
 Nē sit *sēcūrus*, quī nōn est *tūtūs* āb hoste ;
 Ad flūmen *rīpās*, ad mārē *litūs* hābēs.
 Sunt aetātē *sēnēs* ; *vētērēs* vixērē priōrēs :
 Quod nōn est *sīmūlō* *dissīmūlō*quē quōd est.
Annē nōvī quīd hābēs ? *Ālium* pētē : nil ēgō *nōvī*.
 Quod minīmē *rēfert* garrūlūs illē *rēfert*.
 Sī quā fortē *sēdēs*, atque est tībī eommōdā *sēdēs*,
 Illā *sēdē* *sēdē* ; nec mīhī *cēdē* lōcō.

(ENGLISH OF NOUNS, § 25—30.)

[§ 25.] (1) *Silver, gold, iron, plebeian-order, justice, spring, time, death, blood, childhood.* (2) *Ghosts, children, household-gods, riches, cradle, trifles, thanks, arms, functions, huts, feast of Flora.*

[§ 26.] (5) *Artificer, worker, guest, seer, new-comer, witness, citizen, inhabitant, parent, priest (or priestess), guardian, avenger, young man (or woman), infant, informer, judge, heir, companion, guide, chief, burgess, husband (or wife), hostage, bird, interpreter, author, exile, ox (or cow), deer, mole, tiger, crane, dog, snake, serpent, swine.*

[§ 28.] *Paunch, bear-constellation, canvas, distaff, ground, vine-leaf, winnowing-fan, pear-tree, sapphire, sea, poison, common-folk.*

[§ 29.] I. (1) *Spade, order, pirate, hinge, margin.* (2) *Weevil, bat, poniard, staff, butterfly, ternion, vice.* (3) *Echo, flesh.* (4) *Tree, surface (or sea), marble (or sea), heart.* (5) *Whetstone, dowry.* (6) *Osier, maple, stripe, spring, truffle, teat (or fertility), carcase, pepper, journey, poppy.* (7) *Fetter, mat, reward, sheaf, rest, crop, copper.* II. (1) *River, axle, stalk, hill, hind-leg, hair, bundle, bellows, bludgeon, fire, circle (or world), sword, bread, fish, doorpost, month, brand, talon, canal, lever, worm, birthday, stone, blood, cucumber, dust, nets, ghosts, dormouse.* (2) *Path, thorn, rope, end, collar, cinder.* (3) *Adamant, elephant, male, giant, as, bail, vessel.* (4) *Shears, law, death, furniture, pumice, tile, bolt, basalt, sorrel.* (5) *Arch, phoenix, cup.* (6) *Fountain, mountain, iron, dropsy, griffin, bridge, cable, torrent, tooth, client, one-third-part, trident, west, east.* (7) *Boar-pig, scimitar.* III. (1) *Bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.* (2) *Slavery, youth, virtue, safety, old-age, land, anvil, marsh.* (3) *Beast.* (4) *Hare, mouse.* (5) *Mullet, consul, salt, sun, boxer.* (6) *Kidney, spleen, comb, dolphin, woodcock.* (7) *Gorgon, linen, kingfisher.*

[§ 30.] *Tribe, needle, porch, house, daughter-in-law, mother-in-law, old-woman, Ides, hand.*

FIRST MEMORIAL SYNTAX.

ON AGREEMENT.

THE FOUR GENERAL RULES.

[§ 88.] I. A Verb Finite agrees with the Nominative of its Subject in Number and Person :

Māgister dōcēt.
The master teaches.

Lībrī lēguntūr.
Books are read.

Tū dōcēs: nōs discimūs.
Thou teachest: we learn.

Discērē est ūtilē.
To learn is useful.

[§ 89.] II. An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution :

Vīr bōnūs illē bōnam hanc uxōrem hābēt.
That good man has this good wife.

Hīrundō pullis suis orbātā quērītūr.
The swallow bereft of its young complains.

Cārī sunt pārentēs; cārā est pātriā
Dear are parents, dear is country.

Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.
Boys by learning become learned.

[§ 90.] III. A Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in apposition :

Nōs pūērī pātrē Lollīum imitābimūr.
We boys will imitate our father Lollius.

Effōdiuntūr ōpēs, irritāmentā mālōrum.
Riches are dug out, incentives of evil.

Spēs est expectātiō bōnī.
Hope is the expectation of good.

Syllābā longā brēvī subjectā vocātūr Iambus.
A long syllable following a short is called Iambus.

[§ 91.] IV. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause:

Dēum vēnērāmūr quī nōs creāvit.

We worship God, who created us.

Āmicūs est, quem āmāmūs, ā quō āmāmūr.

A friend is one whom we love, by whom we are loved.

Āmō tē, mātēr, quae mē āmās.

I love you, mother, who love me.

ON THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

[§ 92.] With a Composite Subject Plural words agree:

Vēnēnō absumptī sunt Hannībāl ēt Philōpoemēn.

Hannibal and Philopoemen were cut off by poison.

1. If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person:*

Sī tū ēt Tullīā vālētis, ēgō ēt Cīcērō vālēmūs.

If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

2. When the Genders differ, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine:

Pātēr mīhī ēt mātēr mortuī sunt.

My father and mother are dead.

a. If the things are lifeless, the Attributes are often Neuter:

Divītiāe, dēcūs, glōriā in oculīs sitā sunt.

Riches, honour, glory, are placed before our eyes.

ON CASES.

ON THE CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT.

[§ 93.] 1. The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative:

Annī fugiunt.

Years flee.

(2) The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Constāt annōs fugērē.

It is agreed that years flee.

Scīmūs annōs fugērē.

We know that years flee.

[§ 94.] Copulative Verbs, whether Finite or Infinitive, generally have a Complement agreeing with the Subject:

Vitā est somnīum.

Life is a dream.

Vitā dicītūr essē somnīum.

Life is said to be a dream.

Nēmō nascītūr sapiēs.

Nobody is born wise.

Nēmō pōtest nascī sapiēs.

Nobody can be born wise.

* The First Person is considered Prior to the Second, the Second to the Third.



Aiunt vitam esse somnium.

They say that life is a dream.

Constāt nēmīnem nascī sapiētem.

It is agreed that nobody is born wise.

a. The Construction of Accusative with Infinitive is called Oblique (Indirect) Enunciation.

ON THE ACCUSATIVE.

[§ 95.] The Accusative is the Case of the Nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

I. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

[§ 96.] Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object:

Māter ālit pullōs.

The mother nourishes the young ones.

In primīs vērārē Dēum.

In the first place worship God.

[§ 97.] Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning:

Dūram servit servitūtem.

He serves a hard slavery.

Claudius ālēam lūsīt.

Claudius played hazard.

[§ 98.] Some Verbs, especially those of *asking* and *teaching*, admit two Accusatives, one of the Thing, the other of the Person:

Numquam divitiās dēos rōgāvi.

Never asked I of the gods riches.

Quid nunc tē littērās dōcēam?

Why now should I teach you letters?

[§ 99.] Certain Verbs of *making*, *calling*, *thinking*, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the oblique Complement:

Tē faciūmus, Fortunā, dēam.

We make thee, Fortune, a goddess.

Rōmulus urbem suā Rōmam vocāvīt.

Romulus called his city Rome.



II. THE ACCUSATIVE OF LIMITATION.

[§ 100.] The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry :

Trēmīt artūs.		Nūdae sunt lācertōs.
<i>He trembles in his limbs.</i>		<i>They are bare as to the arms.</i>

[§ 101.] The Place, *Whither* one goes, is put in the Accusative ; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or *dōmūs* (*home*), *rūs* (*country*) :

Rēgūlūs *Carthāgīnem* rēdiīt.
Regulus returned to Carthage.
 Vōs itē dōmum : ēgō rūs ibō.
Go ye home : I will go into the country.

[§ 102.] (1) The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative :

Pēriclēs *quādrāgintā annōs* praefūit Āthēnīs.
Pericles led Athens forty years.

(2) The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative :

Ērant mūri Bābylōnīs *dūcēnōs pēdēs* altī.
The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.

[§ 103.] Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case (see the list, § 83).

ON THE DATIVE.

[§ 104.] The Dative is the Case of the Recipient or Remoter Object.

§ 105. I. Words which carry their meaning over to a Remoter Object are called *Trajective*, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied (1) Nearness or (2) Demonstration, (3) Gratification or (4) Dominion ; and any notion contrary to these.

§ 106. *Trajective* Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are

(1) Nearness and its contraries :

Est finītīmūs ōrātōrī pōētā.
A poet is near akin to an orator.
 Nīl fūit unquam sic impār sibi.
Nothing was ever so unequal to itself.
 Congrūentēr nātūrae vivendum est.
We should live agreeably to nature.

Praesentiā confēr praeteritis.
Compare present things with past.

Nec tāmēn ignōrat quid distent aerā lupinis.
And yet he is not ignorant how coins differ from lupins.

(2) Demonstration and its contraries:

Dic mihi, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?
Tell me, Damoetas, whose flock (is this)?

Anguis Sullae appārūit immōlantī.
A snake appeared to Sulla while sacrificing.

Haud cuiquam in dūbiō ērāt bellum immīnērē.
It was not doubtful to any one that war was imminent.

(3) Gratification and its contraries:

Pātriae sūt idōnēūs, ūtilīs āgrīs.
Let him be servicable to his country, useful to the lands.

Turbā grāvis pāci plācidaeque inīmicā quētī.
A crowd oppressive to peace and unfriendly to calm rest.

Quōd ālii dōnāt sibi dētrāhit.
What he gives to another, he withdraws from himself.

Lūcem reddē tūae, dux bonē, pātriae.
Restore light to thy country, good chief.

Nōbīs spondet fortunā sālūtem.
Fortune guarantees safety to us.

Nē libēāt tibi quod nēmīni licēt.
Let not (that) please thee which is lawful to no man.

Parcē pīo gēnēri.
Spare a pious race.

Succensērē nēfās pātriae.
It is impious to be wroth with one's country.

Rēsistendum est appetītibūs.
We should resist our passions.

(4) Dominion and its contraries:

Sāpiens, sibi qui impēriōsus.
The wise man (is he) who (is) lord over himself.

Omnibūs supplex est.
He is suppliant to all.

Impērāt aut servit collectā pēcūniā cuique.
Amassed money sways or serves every man.

Mundūs Dēō pārēt. et huic ōboediunt mārīa terraequē.
The universe obeys God, and seas and lands hearken to Him.

a. Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as *bēnē* (well), *mālē* (ill), *sātīs* (enough),

rē, ad, antē, con, in, intēr, dē, ob, sub, supēr, post, and prae:

Cēteris sātisfāciō sempēr, mīhī numquam.
I satisfy others always, myself never.

Siciliā quondam Itāliae ādhaesit.
Sicily once was attached to Italy.

Gigantēs bellum dīs intulērunt.
The giants waged war on the gods.

Ānātum ovā gallinīs suppōnīmūs.
We place eggs of ducks under hens.

§ 107. II. A Dative can be added anywhere with a certain notion of Advantage or Disadvantage:

Esto, ut nunc multī, dīves tibi, paupēr āmicīs.
Be, as many are now, rich for thyself, poor for friends.

Nūmā virgīnēs Vestae lēgit.
Numa chose virgins for Vesta.

Vēnūs nupsit Vulcānō.
Venus wedded Vulcan (lit. veiled herself for Vulcan).

Philōsōphīae sempēr vācō.
I always am at leisure for philosophy.

a. Refer here the Dative of the Pronoun, which is called the Ethic Dative:

Quid mīhī Celsūs āgit?
What (is) my Celsus doing?

b. Sum with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative:

Sum tibi Mercūrius.
I am to thee Mercury.

Vir mīhī sempēr ābest.
My husband is always absent from me.

c. Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply *having*:

Est hōmīnī cum Dēō similitūdō.
Man has a resemblance to God.

Sunt nobīs mītiā pōma.
We have mellow apples.

d. The same Dative is joined to Participles and Participials of the Passive Voice, especially to Gerundives:

Magnus cīvis obīt et formīdātūs Ōthōnī.
A great citizen is dead, and one dreaded by Otho.

Multīs illē bōnīs flābilīs occidit.
He died a cause of weeping to many good men.

Lēgendae sunt pūerīs Aesōpī fābūlae.
The fables of Aesop are to be read by boys.

§ 108. III. A Dative of the Purpose is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added :

Nimiā fiduciā cālāmītātī sōlēt essē.

Too much confidence is wont to be a calamity.

Exītio est āvidum mārē nautīs.

The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.

§ 109. IV. A Dative of the Complement is used by Attraction, especially in expressions of naming :

Licūt Thēmistōclī essē ōtiōsō.

It was lawful for Themistocles to be at leisure.

Huic ēgō dĩēī nōmēn Trīnummō faciām.

To this day I will give the name Trinummus.

ON THE ABLATIVE.

[§ 110.] The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also Time and Place.

[§ 111.] I. Ablative of Cause :

Ōderunt peccārē bonī virtūtīs āmōre.

The good hate to sin from love of virtue.

Coeptīs immānībūs effērā Didō.

Dido wild with horrid purposes.

[§ 112.] II. Ablative of the Instrument :

Hī jācūlīs, illī certant dēfendērē saxīs.

These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.

[§ 113.] III. Ablative of Manner :

Injuriā fīt dūōbūs mōdīs, aut vī aut fraudē.

Wrong is done in two manners, either by force or by fraud.

[§ 114.] IV. Ablative of Condition :

Pācē tuā cum Thāidē collōquār.

With your leave I will converse with Thais.

Hōmō mēā sententiā prūdētissimū est.

He is a man in my opinion very prudent.

[§ 115.] V. Ablative of Quality, with Epithet :

Quā faciē fuit, cui dēdistī symbolum?

Of what aspect was he to whom you gave the ticket?

Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.

An old man with long beard and rough hair.

[§ 116.] VI. Ablative of Respect :

Angör ānimō.

I am distressed in mind.

Enniūs ingēniō maximūs, artē rūdis.

Ennius, mighty in genius, in art (is) rud.

[§ 117.] VII. Ablative of Price :

Ēgō spem prētīō nōn ēmō.

I buy not hope at a cost.

Quōd nōn ōpūs est, assē cārum est.

What is not needful is dear at a penny.

[§ 118.] VIII. Ablative of Measure :

Longum sesquipedē, lātum pedē est.

It is a foot and a half long, a foot wide.

Sōl multīs partībūs mājōr est quam lūnā.

The sun is many times larger than the moon.

Tantō pessimūs omnium pōetā,

*Quantō tu optimūs omnium patrōnūs.**By so much the worst poet of all,**As you (are) the best patron of all.*

[§ 119.] IX. Ablative of Matter :

Cibūs eōrum lactē, eāsēō, carnē constāt.

Their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh.

a. These words govern an Ablative: (1) The Verbs fungōr (perform), frūōr (enjoy), ūtōr (use), vescōr (eat), pōtiōr (get possession of), dignōr (deem worthy). (2) The Adjectives dignūs (worthy), indignūs (unworthy), contentūs (content), frētūs (relying), praeditūs (endued). (3) The Substantives ōpūs (need), ūsūs (use):

(1) Fungar vīcē cōtīs.

I will perform the function of a whetstone.

Hannibāl, cum victōriā possēt ūtī, frūī mālūt.

Hannibal, when he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it.

Rex impiūs aurō vī pōtītur. § 133.

The impious king gets possession of the gold by force.

(2) Dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētat mōrī.

A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.

(3) Ūbī rēs adsunt, quīd ōpūs est verbīs?

When things are present, what need is there of words?

Ūsūs est filiō viginti minīs.

My son needs twenty minas.

b. Most Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding* or *wanting*, *enriching* or *depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive.

Amor et mellē et fellē est fecundissimū.
Love is very fruitful both in honey and gall.

Nunquam animus motū vacuus est.
The mind is never void of motion.

Vis consilii expers molē ruit sua.
Force devoid of counsel falls by its own weight.

Mancipūs locuplēs egēt aeris Cappadocum rex.
The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, lacks coin.

Vacare culpā maximum est solacium.
To be free from blame is a very great comfort.

§ [120.] X. The Ablative of Time answers the questions
When? Within what time? How long before or after?

Himē omniā bellā conquiescunt.
In winter all wars rest.

Quidquid est biduo sciemus.
Whatever there is we shall know in two days.

Homerus annis multis fuit ante Romulum.
Homer was many years before Romulus.

§ [121.] XI. A. The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition, when the question is, *By what road?*

Ibam forte Viā Sacrā.
I was going by chance on the Sacred Road.

B. The Ablative is often without a Preposition when the question is, *Where?* especially if it is the name of a town, or if it stands with an Epithet.

Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteoli.
Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.

Tabernae totā urbē clauduntur.
The shops are closed in the whole city.

a. Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in *ae, i*:

Quid Romae faciam?		Is habitat Mileti.
What can I do at Rome?		He dwells at Miletus.

b. Like these are hūmī (*on the ground*), dōmī (*at home*), bellī, militiāe (*at the wars*), rurī (*in the country*):

Caesaris virtus dōmī militiacquē cognitā est.
Caesar's virtue was known at home and at the wars.

C. The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is, *Whence?*

Demārātūs fūgīt Cōrīnthō.
Demaratus fled from Corinth.

a. So *dōmō* (*from home*), *rūrē* (*from the country*).

On the Accusative of Place *Whither*, see § 101.

§ [122.] XII. Various Prepositions govern an Ablative. (See the list, § 83).

a. Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially *āb*, *dē*, *ex*:

Quīntiūs dictātūrā sē abdīcāvīt.
Quinctius resigned the dictatorship.
Dētrūdunt nāvēs scōpūlō.
They thrust off the ships from the rock.

b. The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition *ā*, *āb*:

Laudātūr āb hīs, culpātūr āb illīs.
He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.

[§ 123.] XIII. The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also without a Preposition to Verbs and Participles:

Cēdēs cōemptīs saltībūs et dōmō.
You will retire from purchased glades and mansion.
Pēlōpē nātūs, Tāntālō prognātūs est.
He was born of Pelops, descended from Tantalus.

[§ 124.] XIV. Ablative of the Thing Compared:

(1) For *quam* (*than*) with Nominative:

Nihil est amābiliūs virtūtē.
Nothing is more amiable than virtue.
Viliūs argentum est aurō, virtūtībūs aurum.
Silver is less valuable than gold, gold than virtues.

(2) For *quam* with Accusative:

Pūtō mortem dēdēcōrē lēvīōrem.
I think death easier than disgrace.
Nēmīnem Lŷcurgō ūtiliōrem Spartā gēnūt.
Sparta produced no man more serviceable than Lycurgus.

[§ 125.] XV. A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute:

Rēgībūs exactīs consūlēs crēātī sunt.
Kings having been driven out, consuls were elected.

a. For the Participle is often substituted another Substantive, or an Adjective:

Nil desp̄erandum Teucrō dūce ēt ausp̄icē Teucrō.
There must be no despair with Teucer for leader, and Teucer for omen-giver.

Nātus est Augustus consūlibus Cicerōnē et Antōniō.
Augustus was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls.

Jamquē cinis, vivīs frātrībūs, Hector erat.
And now Hector was ashes, his brothers being alive.

Quid dicam, hāc jūventūtē?
What can I say, when our young men are of this stamp?

ON THE GENITIVE.

[§ 126.] The Genitive, the Case of the Proprietor, generally defines Nouns subjectively or objectively.

A. THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 127.] I. Genitive of the Author and Possessor:

Pōlyclētī signā plānē perfectā sunt.
Polycletus's statues are quite perfect.

Singulōrum ōpēs sunt divītiæ civitātis.
The resources of individuals are the riches of the state.

Omnia, quæ mulieris fūerunt, viri fiunt.
All things, which were the woman's, become the husband's.

Ēā stātūā dicēbātūr essē Myrōnis.
That statue was said to be Myro's.

a. Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word omitted.

Hectoris Andromachē (supplē uxōr).
Hector's Andromache (supply wife).

Ventum ērat ad Vestæ (supplē templum).
We had come to Vesta's (supply temple).

b. A Genitive so stands that nature, token, function, or duty, can be supplied.

Cūjusvis hōminis est errārē.
It is in any man's nature to err.

Est adolescentis mājorēs natū vērērī.
The young man's duty is to reverence elders.

Tempōri cēdērē hābētūr sapiētis.
To yield to occasion is held a wise man's function.

[§ 128.] II. Genitive of Quality, with Epithet.

*Ingēnūi vultūs pūēr ingēnūiquē pūdōris.**A boy of high-bred countenance and high-bred modesty.**Claudius ērāt somnī brēvissimī.**Claudius was (a man) of very brief slumber.*

a. The Elliptic Genitives may be remarked: parvī (of small worth), mīnōris (of less value), mīnimī (of very little worth), magnī (of great price), plūris (of more value), plūrimī, (of high value), tantī (of so great price), quantī (of what price), maxīmī (of very great price), to which supply prētīi:

*Vōluptātem virtūs mīnimī faciūt.**Virtue makes pleasure of very small account.**Ēmīt hortōs tantī quantī Pŷthiūs vōlūt.**He bought the pleasure-ground at such price as Pythius wanted.*

[§ 129.] III. Intērest (it imports), rēfert (it concerns), admit a Genitive:

*Intērest omnium rectē faciūr.**It imports all men to act rightly.**Rēfert compōsitiōnis quae quibūs antēpōnās.**It concerns arrangement what things you place before what.*

a. The same Verbs instead of the Genitives of Pronouns use these Cases, mēā, tūā, sūā, nostrā, vestrā, agreeing with rē:

*Ēt tūā ēt mēā intērest tē vālērē.**It imports both your weal and mine, that you be well.**Quid nostrā id rēfert?**What (does) that concern us?*

[§ 130.] IV. A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive:

*Ēlēphantō bēlūdrum est nullā prūdētiūr.**Of beasts, none is more sagacious than the elephant.**Hōmīni ūnī ānīmāntium luctūs est dātūs.**To man alone of animals sorrow has been given.**Sullā centum vīginti sūōrum āmisīt.**Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.**Māior Nērōnum mox grāvē proelium commisit.**The elder of the Neros ere long fought a severe battle.**Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae.**The Belgae are bravest of the Gauls.*

Nēmō mortāliū omnībūs hōrīs sāpit.
Of mortals nobody is wise at all hours.

Piscium fēminae mājorēs sunt quam mārēs.
Of fishes the females (are) larger than the males.

Sēquimur tē, sanctē dēōrum.
We follow thee, holy one of gods.

Hōc ād tē minimē omnium pertīnēt.
This belongs to thee least of all men.

a. *Nostrūm (of us), vestrūm (of you)*, follow Partitives:

Tē venīrē ūterquē nostrūm cūpīt.
Each of us desires that you come.

[§ 131.] V. A Genitive of the Thing Measured is joined to Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives:

Sātīs elōquentīae, sāpientīae pārū est.
He has enough eloquence, too little wisdom.

Āliquīd pristīnī rōbōrīs conservāt.
He keeps something of his old strength.

Quantum nummōrum, tantum fidēi est.
There is the same amount of credit as of money

B. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 132.] I. A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles, which have a certain transitive force, especially if they signify *skill, care, desire*, or whatever is contrary to these.

Insītūs est mentī cognitiōnis āmor.
Love of knowledge is implanted in the mind.

Difficilis est cūrā rērum āliēnārum.
Hard is the care of other people's affairs.

Tempūs ēdax rērum est.
Time is consumer of things.

Corpūs patiēns inēdiāe fūit.
His body was capable of enduring inanition.

Consciā mens rectī est.
The mind is conscious of rectitude.

Impērītūs mōrum fūit.
He was unskilled in manners.

Āvidā est pēriculī virtūs.
Valour is greedy of danger.

Animūs fūit āliēnī appētens, sūi prōfūsūs.
His mind was desirous of another's (wealth), lavish of his own



a. Mēi, tūi, sūi, nostrī, vestrī, are put objectively; mēus, tūus, sūus, nostr̄, vest̄r, subjectively:

Niciās tūā sūi mēmōriā dēlectātūr.

Nicias is charmed with your recollection of him.

(a) A Subjective Genitive understood in a Possessive Pronoun admits a Genitive agreeing with it:

Respublicā mēā ūnūs ōpērā salvā ērāt.

The state was saved by my single exertion.

Āvēs fētūs adultōs sūae ipsōrum fidūciae permittunt.

Birds entrust grown nestlings to their own self-reliance.

[§ 133.] II. A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify *power and impotence, inculpation, innocence, condemnation, acquittal, memory and forgetfulness*:

(1) Rōmānī signōrum pōtītī sunt. § 119 a.

The Romans gained the standards.

Irā est impōtens sūi.

Anger is incapable of self-restraint.

(2) Frāternī est sanguīs insons.

He is innocent of a brother's blood.

Rēus est injūriārum.

He is arraigned of injurious acts.

(3) Pētiliūs furtī absōlūtus est.

Petillius was acquitted of theft.

Condemnāmus hāruspicēs stultitiāe.

We condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of folly.

(4) Rēs adversae admōnent nōs religiōnum.

Adversity reminds us of religious duties.

Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficii ōdērunt.

All men hate one unmindful of a kindness.

a. Mēmīni, rēmīscōr, rēcōrdōr (*I remember*), oblīviscōr (*I forget*), admit Genitive or Accusative:

Jūbet mortis tē mēmīnissē Dēus.

God bids thee remember death.

Dulcēs mōriens rēmīscitūr Argōs.

Dying he remembers sweet Argos.

[§ 134.] III. Pīgēt (*it irks*), pūdēt (*it shames*), paenītēt (*it repents*), tacdēt (*it disgusts*), and mīsrēt (*it moves pity*), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative:

Mīsrēt tē āliōrum: tūā nec mīsrēt nec pūdēt.

Thou pitiest others, for thyself without pity or shame.

Ēos partim scēlērū, partim inep̄tiārū paenītēt.

They repent, some of their crimes, others of their follies.

[§ 135.] IV. *Miseror, miseresco* (*I pity*), take a Genitive;
: *miseror, commiseror* (*I compassionate*), an Accusative :

Arcadii, quæso, miserescite regis.

Pity, I pray, the Arcadian king.

Sortem miseratur iniquam.

He compassionates the unjust fate.

[§ 136.] VI. The Genitive is freely used by poets. But
aeger animi (*sick at heart*), *animi pendeo* (*I waver in mind*),
and the like, appear even in prose.

ON CASES OUT OF THE SENTENCE.

[§ 137.] The Vocative stands out of the Sentence either
without an Interjection or with an Interjection :

Orō tē, fili (*vēl O fili*).

I pray thee, son (or, *O son*).

[§ 138.] The Nominative and the Accusative are used in
Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an In-
terjection :

(1) *Infandum!*
Unutterable!

Eccē novā turbā!
Lo, a new disturbance!

(2) *Mē miserum!*
Wretched me!

En quattuor arās!
Lo, four altars!

[§ 139.] So the Dative is put with *hei* (*alas!*), *vae* (*woe!*)

Ei miserō mihi!
Alas wretched me!

Vae victis!
Woe to the vanquished!

ON THE VERB INFINITE.

[§ 140.] I. The Infinitive stands—

1. Substantively, for Nominative or Accusative:

(1) *Invidere nō cadit in sapientem.*

Envying happens not to a wise man.

Dulce et decōrum est pro patriā mori.

Dying for country is sweet and comely.

(2) *Mori nēmō sapiens miserum dixerit.*

No wise man will call it miserable to die.

2. Predicatively, in narration, for a Finite Verb:

Multi sequi, fugere, occidi, capi.

Many were following, flying, being slain, being captured.

3. Obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. See § 94.

4. Carrying on the construction of a Verb or Adjective:

Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.

They are wont to reflect long who wish to perform great things.

Patriae dicaris esse pater.

Thou art said to be father of thy country.

Ludum insolentem ludere pertinax.

Persisting to play an insolent game.

[§ 141.] II. Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions:

Ad bene vivendum breve tempus satis est.

For living well a short time is sufficient.

2. The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives:

Ars scribendi discitur.

The art of writing is learnt.

Cupidus audiendi est.

He is desirous of hearing.

3. The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs:

Par est dissendō.

He is competent for arguing.

Dat operam legendō.

He pays attention to reading.

4. The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or is joined to a Preposition:

Fugiendo vincimus.

We conquer by flying.

De pugnando deliberant.

They deliberate about fighting.

5. The Supine in *um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion:

Lusum it Maecenās, dormitum egō.

Maecenas goes to play, I to sleep.

a. *Irī* with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive:

Audiērat nōn datum irī filiō uxōrem suō.

He had heard (that there was) no intention (non irī) to give a wife to his son.

6. The Supine in *u* is for an Ablative of Respect:

Foedum dictū est.

It is horrible to state.

Nefās visū est.

It is impious to view.

[§ 142.] III. The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite:

Cūpiō sātisfacērē rēipublicae.

I desire to satisfy the commonwealth.

Cūpidūs sum sātisfaciendī rēipublicae.

I am desirous of satisfying the commonwealth.

Ausi omnēs immānē nēfās ausōquē pōtiti.

All dared monstrous impiety, and achieved their daring.

Ast cōgō non Graiis servitum matrībūs ibō.

But I will not go to be a slave to Greek matrons.

[§ 143.] In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following:

The Object is attracted to the Case of the Gerundive, the Gerundivo to the Number and Gender of the Object:

Brūtūs in libērandā patriā est interfectūs.

Brutus was slain in freeing his country.

Hī septemvīrī fūerunt agrīs dīvidendis.

These were the seven commissioners for dividing lands.

[§ 144.] IV. 1. The Impersonal Gerundive construction implies necessity, principally in Intransitive Verbs:

Bibendum est.

One must drink.

Ēndum ērit.

One will (have) to go.

a. To this may be joined a Dative, more rarely an Ablative with *ā*, *ab*:

Bibendum est nobis.

We must drink.

Vobis ēndum ērit.

You will (have) to go.

b. And any other Case governed by the Verb:

Civibūs est ā vobis consūlendū.

You must consult for the citizens.

Sūo cuiquē iudiciō est utendū.

Each must use his own judgment.

Eudoxūs opīnātūr Chaldaeis mīnimē essē crēdendū.

Eudoxus thinks that astrologers should by no means be believed.

2. The Attributive construction of the Gerundive implies necessity, in Transitive Verbs:

Dēūs ēt dilīgendūs est nobis ēt tīmendūs.

God is both to be loved and feared by us.

Nōn tangendā rātēs transiliunt vādā.

Barks o'erleap the shallows (which should) not be meddled with.

ON THE PRONOUN.

[§ 145.] Sē, sūus, Reflexive Pronouns, are referred to the Subject of the principal Sentence, provided it be of the third Person :

Sentit ānīmūs sē vī sūā mōvērī.
The mind feels (that) it is moved by its own force.

a. Reflexives can be referred to the Object, if that reference involves no ambiguity :

Scipīōnem impellit ostentātiō sūi.
Ostentation of self sways Scipio.

Āpībūs fructum restitūō sūum.
I restore to the bees their produce.

Mors sūā quemquē mānet.
His death awaits every man.

ON SOME PARTICLES.

[§ 146.] Many Conjunctions annex like words to like :

Mirātur portās strēpītumque et strātā viārum.
He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements of the streets.

Virtūs nec ēripī nec surripī pōtest.
Virtue can neither be torn away nor stolen.

Nēmīnem sapiētīōrem pūtō quam Sōcrātem.
I deem no man wiser than Socrates.

Omnē solum fortī patriā est, ut piscībūs aequor.
Every soil is a country to the brave man, as the sea to fishes.

[§ 147.] Nē prohibitive is used with an Imperative or Conjunctive Mood: nēdum (*not to say, much less*), ūtinam (*O that*), ō sī, ūt for ūtinam, with a Conjunctive :

Nē quā mēis estō dietis mōrā.
Let there be no delay to my orders.

Nē culpam in mē contulērīs.
Lay not the fault on me.

Nē dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.
And (let) roses not be wanting to the feast.



Mortālīā factā pēribunt,
Nēdum sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax.
Mortal deeds will perish, much less (can) the honour and popularity of literary works stand permanent.

Ūtinam mīnūs vitāe cūpīdī fūissēmūs.
Would that we had been less fond of life.

O sī urnam argenti fors quae mīhī monstrēt!
O if some chance would show me a pot of silver!

Ūt illum dī dēaequē perdant.
I wish that the gods and goddesses may destroy him.

OUTLINE OF RULES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[§ 148.] The Conjunctive Mood is used, purely, in various senses: but, if it is subjoined to another Verb, it is called Subjunctive.

[§ 149.] Pronouns and Particles, which question indirectly, require a Subjunctive:

Ipsē quis sīt, ūtrum sīt, an nōn sīt, id quōquē nescit.
He knows not even this, who himself is, whether he is, or is not.

Such Interrogatives are:

Quantūs (<i>how great</i>)	Cūr (<i>why</i>)
Ūtēr (<i>which of two</i>)	Quōtiēns (<i>how often</i>)
Quālīs (<i>of what sort</i>)	Quārē (<i>wherefore</i>)
Quīs (<i>who or what</i>)	Quam (<i>how</i>)
Quōt (<i>how many</i>)	Quōmōdō (<i>how</i>)
Quōtūs (<i>which, in order of number</i>)	Num, -nē (<i>whether</i>)
Undē (<i>whence</i>)	Ūt (<i>how</i>)
Ūbī (<i>where or when</i>)	An, ūtrum (<i>whether</i>).
Quandō (<i>when</i>)	

[§ 150.] The Relative quī, with its Particles, ūbī (*where, when, &c.*), undē (*whence*), &c., in its simple sense, takes an Indicative; if there is implied in it *since, although, in order that, or such that*, a Subjunctive:

Misērēt tūi mē, quī hunc faciās inimicum tibi.
I pity you, since you make this man your foe.

Littērās mīsi quibūs ēt placārem eūm ēt mōnērem.
I sent a letter wherewith I might pacify and admonish him.

Quis est quī nōn odērīt prōtervā pūritiām?
Who is there that hates not saucy boyhood?

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs intendās.
The matter is worthy (that) you devote your energies to it.



[§ 151.] A Relative or Conjunction, if it is subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual, requires a Subjunctive.

Ennīus nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam immortalitās consēquātūr.

Ennius considers that death (ought) not to be mourned, which immortality succeeds.

Sōcratēs accūsātūs est quōd corrumpērēt iuventūtem.

Socrates was accused (on the charge) that he corrupted youth.

a. A Conjunctive Mood often has a Subjunctive in subordination to it.

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd rēcēpissēt.

All cry out, he should perform what he had undertaken.

[§ 152.] Of Conjunctions governing * Moods there are three Classes :

I. The First Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Subjunctive is appropriate :

(1) CONSECUTIVE:

Ūt (*so that*)

Quin (*but that*)

(2) FINAL:

Ūt (*in order that*)

Nē (*lest, that . . . not*)

Quō (*in order that*)

Quōmīnūs (*but that*)

(3) CAUSAL:

Quum (*since*)

(4) CONDITIONAL:

Dum

Mōdō

Dummōdō } (*provided that*)

(5) CONCESSIVE:

Licēt

Quamvis

Ūt

} (*although*)

(6) COMPARATIVE:

Tamquam

Vēlūt, ceu

Quāsi, &c. } (*as if*)

II. The Second Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Indicative is appropriate, unless they are subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual.

(1) CAUSAL:

Quōd, quā (*because*)

Quoniam (*since*)

Quandōquidem (*since*)

Siquīdem (*inasmuch as*)

Simul (*as soon as*)

Post-quam (*after that*)

Dum

Dōnēc

Quōdā } (*whilst, as long as*)

(2) TEMPORAL:

Quandō, quum, ūbī (*when*)

Ūt (*when, since*)

Quōtīēs (*as often as*)

(3) CONCESSIVE:

Quamquam (*although, however*)

Ūtūt (*however*)

* When we speak of Moods being governed by Conjunctions, we mean only that certain Conjunctions are used, always or in certain senses, with certain Moods. The reason of Mood is independent of Conjunctions; but Conjunctions distinguish the relations of Clauses more fully, as Prepositions distinguish the relations of Nouns.

III. The Third Class consists of those Conjunctions which either the Indicative or the Subjunctive follows, according as the matter expressed is fact or contingency.

(1) TEMPORAL:

Dum, donec, quoad (until)
Ante-quam } (before that)
Prius-quam }

(2) CONDITIONAL AND CONCESSIVE:

Si (if)
Nisi (unless)
Etsi, etiamsi (although,
even if)

a. [§ 153.] Idioms of the Latin language are:

(1) Quum (when) followed by a Subjunctive of the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Zenonem, quum Athenis essem, audiebam frequentem.
I often used to hear Zeno, when I was at Athens.

Decessit Agasiläus quum in portum venisset.
Agasiläus died, when he had come into harbour.

(2) Dum (whilst), followed by an Indicative Present, even in oblique subordination, and concerning a past circumstance:

Quem ardorem studii censetis fuisse in Archimede, qui,
dum in pulvere quaedam describit attentius, ne patriam
quidem captam esse sensit?

What ardour of study think ye there was in Archimedes, who, whilst drawing some figures in the dust with peculiar attention, did not perceive even that his country was captured?

b. [§ 154.] A Conjunction is sometimes understood.

Philosophiae servias oportet.
It behoves (that you) be a servant to philosophy (supply ut).

Quaeram justum sit necne poema.
I will inquire (whether) it be a true poem or not (supply utrum).

Partem operis in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.
Thou, Icarus, wouldst have a share in this great work, did grief allow (supply si).

c. [§ 155.] The Rule for the Consecution of Tenses is, that Primary Tenses are subordinated to Primary, Historic to Historic. (§ 48).

Examples may be looked out from the Syntax.



SUPPLEMENTARY RULES OF AGREEMENT.

[§ 156.] (1) Adjectives are put for Substantives :

Multā paup̄rī dēsunt, āvārō omniā.
Many things are wanting to the poor man, to the miser all things.

(2) Infinitives are put for Substantives :

Vivēre est vālērē.
To live is to be well.

(3) Clauses are put for Substantives :

Crēdibilē est omniā consiliō fieri.
It is probable that all things happen by design.

[§ 157.] The Nominative of an Impersonal Verb is not apparent unless it be an Infinitive or a Clause :

Pūdēt eum facti (i.e. *pūdōr pūdet*).
He is ashamed of the act.

Quid agitur? Stātūr (i.e. *stātio fit*).
What is being done? There is a stand-still.

Taedēt eādem audirē milliēs.
To hear the same things a thousand times is tedious.

Magnī intērest ut tē vīdēam.
It is of great importance that I should see you.

[§ 158.] A Word is understood when omitted by the figure Ellipsis :

Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum (understand *est* twice).
Nothing is good but what is morally right.

Perfundor gelidā (understand *aquā*).
I bathe myself with cold water.

[§ 159.] Agreement is varied by the figure called Attraction :

Nōn omnis error stultitiā est dicendā.
Not every error must be called folly.

Thēbae, quod Boeotiāe caput est.
Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.

[§ 160.] Agreement with the meaning takes place by the figure called Synesis, especially in poetry :

Sūbēunt Tēgēaeā iuventūs auxiliō tardī.
The youth of Tegea come slow to the succour.

Ubi est is scēlūs, quī mē perdidit?
Where is that villain, who has ruined me?

OUTLINE OF PROSODY.

[§ 161.] Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables and of the laws of metre.

ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- [§ 162.] 1. Every diphthong and contracted syllable is long.
 2. Primitives give their own quantity to their derivatives.
 3. A vowel coming before a vowel will be short.
 4. Any vowel becomes long by Position, which two consonants follow, as *tristis*: or which in the same word *j* follows or *x* or *z*: so *Ajax*, *āris*, *Amāzon*.
 5. A vowel, though short by its own power, is doubtful if a mute consonant with a liquid after it follows; thus you will say rightly (*lugūbre* melos) a mournful melody, or *lugūbre*.
 a. *Gn* always makes a long syllable, as *āgnus* and *īgnis*: and like wise *gm*; which *tēgmen* and *āgmen* shew.

ON THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

- [§ 163.] 1. Most words of one syllable are long, as *mē*, *vēr*.
 2. Words ending in A are long: *frustrā*, and *contrā*, and *parā*.
 a. Except Accusative and Nominative Cases: (*Musā*) the Muse sings (*carminā*) songs: the woods resound (*Amaryllidā*) *Amaryllis*.
 3. E final is short: as *legē*, *timetē*, *carerē*.

[§ 162.] 1. Examples: *heū*; *cōigo=cōgo*. Except *prae* before a vowel, as *praeunte*.

2. Examples: *pōmum*, *pōmarium*; *sālix*, *sālicetum*. Exceptions are numerous, as *hōmo*, *hūmanus*; *nūbo*, *pronūba*; *nōtus*, *cognitus*.

3. Examples: *principium*, *prōhio*. (H is regarded as a breathing only, and not taken into account in Prosody.) Many Greek exceptions; *Chāonis*, *Aenēas*, *Clio*, *Myrtōus*, *Enyo*. Some Latin; *diēi*, *Pompēi*; *aulāi*, *ēheu*; *fio* (except before *er*, as *fieri*); Doubtful: *fidēi*, *Diana*; Gen. in *lus*; *illius*.

[§ 163.] 1. Exceptions: words in *i*, *b*, *d*, *t*, *vāl*, *sūb*, *id*, *ēt*, *stēt*. Also *ēs* and its compounds, *adēs*; *quē*, *vē*, *nē* interrogative; *nēc*, *ān*, *in*, *pēr*, *tēr*, *vīr*, *cōr*, *ēs* (*ossis*), *fāc*, *fēr*, *bis*, *is*, *cis*, *quis*.

2. a. Most Vocatives in *ā* are short; *Orestā*; also *ejā*, *itā*, *quā*.

3. Except Cases of the 1st and 5th Declension, as *Thisbē*, *speciē*; their Derivatives; *quārē*, *hodīē*; Imperatives Sing. of the 2nd Conj.; *audē* (but *cavē* is doubtful). Adverbs derived from Adjectives; *misērē*; also *fermē*, *ferē*, *chē*, *fāmā*.

4. Words in I are long; *dici* and *plebi* and *doli*.
5. Words in O are long; *virgō* and *multō* and *juvō*.
6. Words in U are long, so *tū* and *dictū* and *diū*.
7. Y final is short; thus poets have *chelŷ*, *Tŷphŷ*.
8. Words in C are long, as *illŷc*, except *donŷc*.
9. Shorten words in L, D, T; thus *Hannibāl*, *illūd*, *amavŷt*.
10. N final is short, *Ilŷōn*, *agmŷn*, are instances.
11. R final is short; as *calcār*, *amabitŷr*, *Hectōr*.
12. Words in As are long; as *terrās* and *Menalcās*.
13. Words in Es are long; as *sedēs* and *viderēs*.
14. Is final is short; as *dicerŷs*, *utilŷs*, *ensŷs*.
 - a. The Oblique Cases Plural are excepted, as *terrŷs*, *vobŷs*; also the Second Person Singular, Present Tense, of the Fourth Conjugation, as *audŷs*; the compounds of *vŷs*, *sŷs*; *malŷs*, *nolŷs*, and *velŷs*.
15. Words in Os are long, as *ventōs* and *sacerdōs*.
16. Us final is short: *opŷs*, *intŷs*, *amamŷs*, are instances.
 - a. Except from this rule the contracted cases of the Fourth Declension, as *artŷs*; and words which, increasing, have long penult; as *tellŷs* and *incŷs*, *juventŷs* and *senectŷs*.
17. Ys final is short: *chelŷs*, *Othrŷs*, *Erinŷs*, are instances.
 - a. The custom of Authors governs Quantity, if a rule is wanting.

ON THE LAWS OF METRE.

[§ 164.] A long syllable following a short is called Iambus (˘ -): but if a long syllable goes before a short one, that is a Trochee (- ˘):
 A Spondee will consist of two long syllables (- -);
 A Dactyl is formed by a long and two short syllables (- ˘ ˘).

ON SCANSION AND FIGURES OF SCANSION.

[§ 165.] 1. Scansion, which Figures adjust by various art, distributes a Verse according to Feet.

4. Exceptions are: Greek Datives and Vocatives; *Thysŷdŷ*, *Chlorŷ*; also *sicubi*, *neombŷ*, *nŷsŷ*, *quastŷ*. But *mŷhŷ*, *tŷbŷ*, *sŷbŷ*, *ubŷ*, *ibl*, are doubtful.
5. The quantity of words in O, especially Verbs and Proper Names, fluctuates. Oblique Cases, and Adverbs in O derived from Adjectives, have ō long, except *citō*. Modō and its Compounds, *egō*, *duō*, *octō*, *sciō*, *nesciō*, have ō short: *immō*, *putō*, doubtful.
10. Exceptions: many Greek words; *Hymŷn*, *Ammŷn*.
11. Exceptions: many Greek words; *cratŷr*, *aŷr*.
12. Exceptions: Greek cases of Third Declension; *Arcās*, *lampadās*. Also *anŷs*, a duck.
13. Exceptions: Greek Plurals increasing; *Troadēs*: also *penēs*; and some Singular Nouns which increase short, as *segŷs*.
14. a. *Gratŷs*, *forŷs*, are long: and Substantives which increase long; *Samnŷs*, *Sŷmois*. *Ris* of the Future and Perfect in Verbs is doubtful, as *fecerŷs*.
15. Some Greek words in ōs (os) are short; *Argōs*, *epōs*.
16. a. Some words from the Greek in ŷs are long; *Sapphŷs*, *Melampŷs*, *Ieudŷs*.

2. Synaloepha (Elision) will cut off a Vowel at the end of a word, if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word: *Phyllid' am' ant' alias*, for *Phyllida amo ante alias*.

3. Ecthipsis will cut off a Vowel and *m* from the end, if there be a Vowel at the beginning of the next word: *O curas homin', O quant' est in rebus inane*, for *hominum, quantum*.

a. The last syllable of a verse is counted doubtful.

[§ 166.] I. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse wins the Olympia. You will sing with your voice: up, lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. To please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured one desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. The man leads a wife; the bride veils for a husband. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. The boy's forehead is smooth, but the girl's tongue light. Seek hares in plains, elegancies in books. I bid not a penny for him who bids not a penny for me. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Silvia strokes lovingly, while she milks, her gentle cow. You will have done a duty, if you have sent coins to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, smeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pīla* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: but poplar is a tree. The prow is the front (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to go quick, you have need to use all the sails.

II. Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: see lest you be inveigled by trust. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; one duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. Have you any news? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: nor give up the place to me.

APPENDIX I.

I. NOTES ON ETYMOLOGY.

I. NOUNS.

A. Substantives, §§ 16-25:—

FIRST DECLENSION, § 18.

- a.* The old Genitive ending **as** remains in *familias* :
Pater- (mater-) *familias*, *father (mother) of a family*.
b. The Gen. in **ai** is found in epic and comic poetry : *aquai*.
c. Nouns which form Gen. Pl. in **um**, instead of *arum*, are (1) Patronymics : *Aeneades* ; (2) Some names of people, *Lapitha* ; (3) Compounds with *-cola*, *-gena* ; *caelicola*, *terrigena* ; (4) *Drachma*, *amphora*.
d. Nouns like *Dea*, with Dat. Abl. Pl. **abus**, are some of those which correspond to Masculine Nouns in *us* : *filia*, *nata*, *liberta*, *mula*, &c.

SECOND DECLENSION, § 19.

- a.* Nouns declined like *filius* are, *genius*, *familiar spirit*, and Latin Proper Names in *ius* ; *Mercurius*, *Laelius*.
b. The Gen. *ii* was often contracted into **i**. Virgil and Horace use **i** ; Ovid writes **ii**.
c. The Gen. Pl. in **um** for *orum* appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades : *nummus*, *sestertius*, *medimnus*, *modus*, *talentum*, *faber*. So, *denum talentum* ; *praefectus fabrum*. (2) Some names of people : *Argivus*, *Danaus*. Poets often use it in words of short penult ; *virum* for *virorum*.
d. Greek nouns in **os**, *m.* and *f.*, have Acc. on or *um* : *Delos* ; Acc. *Delon* or *Delum*. Nouns in **on**, *n.*, are like *bellum* in all but N. V. A. Sing. ; *Pelion*.
e. *Pelagus*, *sea*, *virus*, *poison*, being Neuter, have Acc. and Voc. the same as Nom. *Vulgus*, *common people*, is Masculine or Neuter, and has *-um* or *-us* in Acc. These three Nouns have no Plural.

THIRD DECLENSION, §§ 20-22.

1. Variant Consonant Nouns :

Old man, Swine, Ox or cow, Jupiter,

	m.	c.	c.	m.	
N. V.	Senex	Sus	Bos	Juppiter	
Acc.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	em
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	is
Dat.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	i
Abl.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	o
N. V. A.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	—	es
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	—	—	um
D. Abl.	Sen-	—	—	—	idus

Sus has Dat. Abl. Pl. subus or suibus; bos has Gen. Pl. boum
Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.

Iter, *journey*, n.; Gen. itiner-is.

Jecur, *liver*, n.; Gen. jecōris or jecinōr-is.

Supellex, *furniture*, f.; Acc. supellectilem.

Parisyllable Nouns, declined like Consonant Nouns, are:
the syncopated words, pater, mater, frater, accipiter;
canis, juvenis, vates, volucris.

2. Variant I-Nouns:

Imparisyllable I-Nouns, like dens, are: (1) Nouns with Stem ending in two Consonants, except lynx; (2) the words, glis, lis, mas, mus, nix (nivis), strix, with faux and vis.

Nouns like tussis are: sitis, *thirst*, f.; amussis, *carpenter's rule*, f.; with a few more. Also names of rivers, Tiberis, *Tiber*, m.; of towns, Hispalis, *Seville*, f.

Like clavis: classis, *fleet*, f.; febris, *fever*; messis, *harvest*; navis, *ship*, f.; puppis, *stern*, f., and a few others. Restis, *rope*, f., Abl. ē; securis, *axe*, f., Abl. ī only.

Like canalis are Adjectival Nouns: aedilis, m.

Like imber are: ūter, *bladder*; venter, *belly*, m.; linter, *boat*, f.

3. Greek Consonant-Nouns form Acc. Sing. in ā or em; Acc. Plur. usually in ās:

Gigas, <i>giant</i> , m.	gigant-	ā, em	ās
Lampas, <i>torch</i> , f.	lampād-	ā, em	ās
Cratēr, <i>bowl</i> , m.	cratēr-	ā, em	ās
Aēr, <i>air</i> , m.	aēr-	ā, em	ās
So, Naïs, <i>Naiad</i> , f.	Naïd-	ā, em	ās
Hērōs, <i>hero</i> , m.	herō-	ā, em	ās
Erinys, <i>fury</i> , f.	Eriny-	ā	ās

Greek Nouns in īs, ŷs, have Voc. ī, ŷ: Pař, Nař, Erinŷ.

Greek I-Nouns have Nom. īs, f.; Voc. ī; Acc. ĩn or ĩm; Gen. ěōs; Dat. Abl. ĩ: poēsis, *poetry*.

4. The following are various Masculine forms of Proper Names:

Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
1. ēūs	eu	ĕum, ĕā	ĕī, ĕōs	ĕī, ōī, ĕō	ĕō
2. ĕs, ēūs	ĕ, eu	em, ĕn, ĕā	īs, ĕī, ī, ĕōs	ī	ĕ
3. ĕs	ĕ, ĕs	em, ĕn	īs, ī	ī	ĕ, ĕ
4. ĕs	ĕs	em, ĕā	īs, ī	ī	ĕ
5. ĕs	ĕ, ĕs	em, ĕn, ĕtā	īs, ĕtīs	ī, ĕtī	ĕ, ĕtĕ

Examples.—1. Orpheus, Peleus. 2. Achilles, Ulixes (ēūs). 3. Socrates, Thucydides. 4. Eteocles, Pericles. 5. Chremes, Thales.

FOURTH DECLENSION, § 23.

The Nouns which prefer ūbūs to ĩbūs in Dat. Abl. Pl. are Disyllables in **cus**: arcus, *bow*; also, tribus, *tribe*; partus, *birth*; artus (Plur.), *limbs*; and veru, *spit*, N.

Poets often contract **ui** into **ū**: Parce metu.—VERG.

FIFTH DECLENSION, § 24.

Dies, day, and *res, thing*, are the only Nouns which form the increasing Cases in the Plural. Most have no Plural at all.

Poets contract *ei* into *ē*: *Constantis juvenem fide*.—Hor.

Fidei generally has *e* short: *so rei, spei*.

Respublica, commonwealth, declines both elements: Acc. *rempublicam*, Gen. *reipublicae*, etc. So *jusjurandum, oath*; Gen. *jurisjurandi*, etc.

ANOMALOUS SUBSTANTIVES, § 25.

The chief Nouns, Plural only, besides those named (2) are:

DECL. 1. <i>f.</i>	<i>Deliciae, delight</i>	<i>Nonae, Nones</i>
	<i>Epulae, feast</i>	<i>Nundinae, market-day</i>
	<i>Exsequiae, funeral rites</i>	<i>Nuptiae, bridal</i>
	<i>Feriae, holidays</i>	<i>Reliquiae, remnant</i>
	<i>Insidiae, ambush</i>	<i>Tenebrae, darkness</i>
	<i>Kalendae, Calends</i>	<i>Athenae, Athens</i>
	<i>Minae, threats</i>	<i>Thebae, Thebes</i>
DECL. 2.	<i>Fasti, annals</i>	<i>Delphi</i>
		<i>Gabii</i>
DECL. 3.	<i>Fores, door, f.</i>	<i>Moenia, town walls, n.</i>
DECL. 4.	<i>Artus, limbs, m.</i>	<i>Idus, Ides, f.</i>

The most important Nouns which change meaning in Plural (3) are:

DECL. 1.	<i>Copia, plenty, f.</i>	<i>Copiae, forces</i>
DECL. 2.	<i>Ludus, play, m.</i>	<i>Ludi, public games</i>
DECL. 3.	<i>Aedes, temple, f.</i>	<i>Aedes, house</i>

Add to Defective Nouns:

Mane, morning, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing.

Fas, right; *nefas, wrong*; *instar, likeness*; *nihil, nothing*; *necesse, necessity*; *opus, need*: Nom. Acc. Sing.

Fors, chance; Abl. S. *forte, by chance*.

Sponte, by one's own choice.

B. Adjectives, §§ 32-37:—

§ 33. *a.* Like *melior* are declined Comparatives. *Vetus (veter-), ancient*, has the same endings as *melior* in the Oblique Cases and Plural.

Like *felix*, Adjectives in *ax, ix, ox, ux*.

Like *ingens*, Adjectives in *-ns, -rs, ex*; also *locuples (locuplēt-), wealthy*; *par (pār-)* with its compounds. Present Participles have Abl. S. *i*, when used as Epithets; otherwise *ē*: with occasional exception.

Like *a c e r*, Adjectives of the Second Class in *-cer, -ster*; also *celeber, renowned*; *saluber, healthful*.

β. Abl. S. *ī*, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Plur. Nom. Acc.: *inop-s, destitute*; *vigil, wakeful*; *memor, mindful*; *degener, degenerate*; *uber, fruitful*.

γ. Abl. S. *ē*, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Pl.: *ales (alit-), winged*; *dives (divit-), rich*; *sospes (sospit-), safe*; *superstes (superstit-), surviving*; *compos (compot-), possessing*; *impos (impot-), not possessing*; *deses, reses (desid-, resid-), inactive*; *pauper, poor*; *puer, of age*.



C. Pronouns, § 38:—

The suffixes -mēt, -tē, -ptē, -cē, strengthen various Pronouns.

Mēt may be joined 1. to ego and its cases (except Gen. Plur.): egomet, *I myself*; 2. to the cases of tu (except Nom. Sing.): vosmet, *ye yourselves*; 3. to se and its cases, except sui: sibimet; 4. to the cases of suus: suamet facta.

Tē is joined to tu: tute; also, tutemet, *thou thyself*.

Ptē is joined especially to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessive Pronouns: meopte consilio, *by my advice*.

Cē is joined to the Demonstratives: huncce, hujusce. For illece, istece, are written illic, istic, which may be declined,

	Sing.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	istic	istaec	istuc	istice	istaecce	istace
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istuc	istosce	istasce	istace
Gen.	istiusce,	etc.		istorumce,	etc.	

From the Possessives noster, vester, ejus, are derived:

Nostr-as (āt-), of our country. | Cuj-as (āt-), of what country.
Vestr-as (āt-), of your country.

D. Derived Nouns.

1. Substantiva Mobilia have a Feminine as well as a Masculine form:

a. Many O-Nouns have a Feminine A-Noun formed by changing ūs into ā: agnus, *lamb*; asinus, *ass*; cervus, *stag*; deus, *god*; dominus, *lord*; equus, *horse*; famulus, *house-servant*; filius, *son*; libertus, *freed-man*; lupus, *wolf*; maritus, *husband*; mulus, *mule*; natus, *son*; servus, *slave*; sponsus, *bridegroom*; ursus, *bear*, &c. Fem. agna, asina, etc.

Avus, *grandfather*, has avia; gallus, *cock*, gallina; caper, *he-goat*, capra and capella; puer, *boy*, puella; magister, minister, change *ter* into *tra*; poeta, *poet*, poetria; citharista, *harper*, citharistria. Taurus, *bull*, has vacca, *cow*; verna, *born-slave*, ancilla, *maid-servant*.

b. Consonant-Nouns verbal in tōr often have a Feminine trix: ultor, *avenger*, ultrix; victor, *conqueror*, vietrix. Some in trix are found as Adjectives: arma victricia, *victorious arms*.

c. Caupo, *vintner* (3), has Fem. copa (1); cliens, *client* (3), clienta (1); fidicen, *lute-player* (3), fidicina (1); tibicen, *flute-player* (3), tibicina (1); leo, *lion* (3), leaena or lea (1).

d. Gentile names: Cres, *Cretan* (3), Cressa (1); Iaco, *Lacedaemonian* (3), Lacaena (1); Libys, *Libyan* (3), Libyssa (1); Phoenix, *Phoenician* (3), Phoenissa (1); Thrax, *Thracian* (3), Thraeissa (1); Tros, *Trojan* (3), Troas (3), &c.

e. Nepos, *grandson* (3), has Fem. neptis (3); aries, *ram* (3), ovis, *ewe* (3); vir, *man* (2), mulier, *woman* (3); gener, *son-in-law* (2), nurus (4); socer, *father-in-law* (2), socrus (4); senex, *old man* (3), anus (4).

Note. Nouns having only one Gender for both sexes are called Epicoena (ἐμικοίνα): passer, *sparrow*, m.; vulpes, *fox*, f. Sex must be expressed, if needful, by the words mas, *femina*: vulpes mas, *a dog-fox*.

2. Deminutives are Derived Nouns which express smallness. Deminutives are formed, chiefly, in

M.	F.	N.
1. -ŭlus	-ŭla	-ŭlum
2. -ŏlus	-ŏla	-ŏlum
3. -ellus	-ella	-ellum
4. -cŭlus	-cŭla	-cŭlum
1. riv-ulus, <i>streamlet</i>	cist-ula, <i>small chest</i>	scut-ulum, <i>small shield</i>
2. fili-olus, <i>little son</i>	capre-ola, <i>young roe</i>	savi-olum, <i>kiss</i>
3. ag-ellus, <i>small field</i>	pat-ella, <i>saucer</i>	lab-ellum, <i>lip</i>
4. flos-culus, <i>floweret</i>	parti-cula, <i>particle</i>	munus-culum, <i>little present</i> .

Adjectives are also diminished: as, parvulus, pallidulus, misellus.

3. Patronymics are Personal Names, derived from a parent or ancestor.

Masc.		
Ādēs,	Aeneādes, <i>son of</i>	Aeneas.
īdēs,	Tyndarīdes	Tyndarus.
idēs,	Nelīdes	Neleus.
īādēs	Thestiādes	Thestius.
Fem.		
īs,	Tyndaris, <i>daughter of</i>	Tyndarus.
ēīs,	Nelēis,	Neleus.
ās,	Thestias,	Thestius.

And some others.

II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

A. CHANGES OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) A, ab =

A before *m, v*: amitto, avoco.

Ab before *c, t*: abseco, absterreo.

As before *p*: asporto.

Au before *f*: aufero, aufugio. But afui, afore.

Ab before other letters: abeo, abdo.

(2) Ad remains before *h, d, h, j, m, v*, and vowels: adbibō, addo, adhibeo, adjicio, admitto, advoco, adeo.

becomes *a-* before *gn, sc, sp*: agnosco, ascendo, aspicio.

is assimilated before other letters: affero, appono, assisto.

(3) Con- (for cum), in-, are written com-, im-, before *p, b, m*: comparo, combibo, immitto.

are assimilated before *l, r*: colludo, irruo.

Con- becomes *co-* before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: coeo, coheres cognosco. So ignosco. Note comēdo, comburo.

Con-, in-, remain before other consonants: confero, induco.

(4) Ob, sub, are assimilated before *c, g, p, f*: occurro, opono, suppono. So summoveo.

Except suscipio, suscito, suspendo, suspicio.

They remain before other letters.

Except sustinco, sustollo, sustuli, surripio.

Note omitto, ostendo.

- (5) *E, ex*, are assimilated before *f*: *effero*.
Ex before vowels, *h, c, q, p, s, t*: *exeo, exhibeo, excedo, exquiro, expello, extruo,* extraho*.
E before others: *educo, evoco*.
- (6) *Trans* becomes *tra* before *d, j, n*: *trado, trajicio, trano*.
Tran- before *s*: *transcribo*.
- (7) *Dis-* is assimilated before *f*: *differo*.
 Remains before gutturals, labials, *t, j*, and *s* with vowels: *discerpo, dispello, distraho, disjicio, dissero*. But *di-judico*.
Di- before *s* with consonant, and before other consonants: *dir-tingo, diruo*.
 Not used before vowels. But *dir-ibeo* for *dis-hibeo*, *dir-imo* for *dis-imo*.
- (8) *Re- se-* add *d* in *reddo, redeo, redhibeo, redīmo, redoleo, seditio*.

B. VOWEL-CHANGE IN COMPOSITION.

- a. Verbs weakening *a* into *e* in all forms of their compounds:
 (1) *damnare, jactare, lactare, patrare, sacrare, tractare*;
 (2) *arcēre*; (3) *-candēre, carpēre, scandēre, spargēre, gradi, pati*; (4) *farcire, partiri*.
- b. Verbs weakening *a* into *u* in all forms: (1) *calcare, saltare*;
 (3) *quatēre, (-cutēre, -cussi, -cussum)*.
- c. Verbs weakening *ae* into *i* in all forms: (3) *caedēre (-cīdi, -cīsum), laedēre (-lidēre, -lisi, -lisum), quaerēre (-quīrēre, -quī-sivi, -quisitum)*.
- d. Verb weakening *au* into *ū* in all forms: (3) *claudēre (-clūdēre, -clūsi, -clūsum)*.
- e. Verb weakening *au* into *ō* in all forms: (3) *plaudēre (-plōdēre, -plōsi, -plōsum)*. Exc. *applaudēre*.
- f. Verbs weakening *a* into *i* in all forms: (2) *habēre, latēre, placēre, tacēre*; (3) *sapēre, statuēre*. Exc. *complacēre, perplacēre*.
- g. Verbs which vary the Vowel in the forms of compounds:—
- (a) *a × i, e, a*: (3) *agēre (-igēre, -ēgi, -actum), frangēre (-fringēre, -frēgi, -fractum), pangēre (-pingēre, -pēgi, -pactum)*.
 Exc. *circum-, peragēre (-ēgi, -actum), cogēre (co-ēgi, -actum), degēre (dēgi), satagēre (satēgi), repangēre*.
- (b) *a × i, i, a*: (3) *cadēre (-cidēre, -cīdi), tangēre (-tingēre, -tīgi, -tactum)*.
- (c) *a × i, i, e*: (3) *canēre (-cinēre, -cīnui, -centum), rapēre (-ripēre, -ripūi, -reptum)*.
- (d) *a × i, e, e*: (3) *capēre (-cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum), facēre (-ficēre, -fēci, -fectum), jacēre (-jicēre, -jēci, -jectum), lacēre (-licēre, -lexi, -lectum)*. Exc. *benefacēre* and many other compounds of *facēre (-fācēre, -fēci, -factum), elicēre, elicui, elicitum*.
- (e) *a × i, i, u*: (4) *salire (-silire, -silui, -sultum)*.
- (f) *a × i, e*: (2) *fatēri (-fitēri, -fessus)*; (3) *apisci (-ipisci, -eptus)*.

* The Greek form *ec* (*ix*) must be assumed when *expecto, exui, &c.* are written for *ec-specto, ec-sui, &c.*

- (g) *e x i, i, e*: (2) *tenēre* (-*tinēre*, -*tinui*, -*tentum*).
 (h) *e x i, e, e*: (2) *sedēre* (-*sidēre*, -*sēdi*, -*sessum*); (3) *regēre* (-*rigēre*, -*rexī*, -*rectum*), *specēre* (-*spicēre*, -*spexī*, -*spec-tum*), *premēre* (-*primēre*, -*pressī*, -*pressum*), *emēre* (-*imēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emptum*), *legēre* (-*ligēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*). *Exc.* *circumsedēre*, *pergēre* (*perrexī*, *perrectum*), *surgēre* (*surrexī*, *surrectum*); *co-*, *per-*, *inter-* (-*emēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emp-tum*). Also *sublegēre* (-*lēgi*, -*lectum*), *di-ligēre*, *neg-legēre*, *intelligēre* (-*lexī*, -*lectum*). These four last are from *legēre*, *to choose*. The compounds of *legēre*, *to read*, are *per-*, *prae-*, *re-* (-*legēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*).

EXAMPLES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. (1) <i>Condemno, condemn</i> | Conticeo, <i>be silent</i> |
| Objecto, <i>cast forward</i> | (3) <i>Desipio, be silly</i> |
| Delecto, <i>delight</i> | <i>Restituo, restore</i> |
| Impetro, <i>obtain</i> (by ask-
ing) | g. (a) (3) <i>Abigo, drive away</i> |
| Consacro, <i>consecrate</i> | <i>Refringo, beat back</i> |
| Obtrecto, <i>disparage</i> | <i>Impingo, knock against</i> |
| (2) <i>Coerceo, confine</i> | (b) (3) <i>Occido, die</i> |
| (3) <i>Incendo, set on fire</i> | <i>Attingo, reach</i> |
| <i>Excerpo, cull</i> | (c) (3) <i>Succino, sing low</i> |
| <i>Ascendo, climb</i> | <i>Diripio, tear asunder</i> |
| <i>Dispergo, disperse</i> | (d) (3) <i>Decipio, deceive</i> |
| <i>Progredior, go forward</i> | <i>Efficio, effect</i> |
| <i>Perpetior, endure</i> | <i>Ejicio, cast out</i> |
| (4) <i>Infercio, stuff in</i> | <i>Allicio, allure</i> |
| <i>Dispartior, distribute</i> | (e) (4) <i>Circumsilio, leap round</i> |
| b. (1) <i>Proculco, trample down</i> | (f) (2) <i>Diffiteor, disown</i> |
| <i>Insulto, insult, leap on</i> | (3) <i>Adipiscor, acquire</i> |
| (3) <i>Decutio, shake down</i> | (g) (2) <i>Abstineo, abstain</i> |
| c. (3) <i>Occido, kill</i> | (h) (2) <i>Praesideo, preside</i> |
| <i>Collido, dash together</i> | (3) <i>Porrigo, stretch</i> |
| <i>Acquiro, acquire</i> | <i>Transpicio, look through</i> |
| d. (3) <i>Includo, shut in</i> | <i>Opprimo, weigh down</i> |
| e. (3) <i>Explodo, stamp off</i> | <i>Eximo, take out</i> |
| f. (2) <i>Prohibeo, prohibit</i> | <i>Colligo, collect</i> |
| <i>Displiceo, displease</i> | <i>Diligo, love</i> |
| | <i>Perlargo, read through</i> |

Note.—The Compounds of Verbs which reduplicate the Perfect omit the Reduplication in their Perfects, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *curro*, *do*, etc.

III. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

* The full series comprises—1 Interrogative; 2 Demonstratives; 3 Relative; 4 Indefinite; 5 Universals. These last are subdivisible under several heads. In the following list the dual series (*uter*, &c.) is marked *.

PRONOUNS.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Quis? qui? who? what?</i> | <i>Idem, the same</i> |
| * <i>Uter? which of two?</i> | <i>Alius, another</i> |
| 2 <i>Ille, iste, that</i> | * <i>Alter, the one, the other</i> |
| <i>Hic, this</i> | 3 <i>Qui, who</i> |

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>4 Quis, qui, <i>any one</i>
 Aliquis, aliqui, <i>some one</i>
 Quispiam, <i>any one</i>
 Quisquam, ullus, <i>any at all</i>
 Quidam, <i>a certain one</i>
 *Alteruter, <i>one or other</i></p> <p>5 a. Quisquis, quicumque, <i>whosoever, whatsoever</i>
 *Uteruter, uterumque, <i>which-soever</i></p> | <p>b. Quivis, quilibet, <i>any you will</i>
 *Utervis, uterlibet, <i>which you will</i></p> <p>c. Quisque, each (of several)
 Omnes, universi, <i>all</i>
 *Uterque, each (of two)
 *Ambo, <i>both</i></p> <p>d. Nemo, nullus, <i>no one, none</i>
 *Neuter, <i>neither</i></p> |
|--|---|

ADVERBS OF PLACE WHERE.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1 Ubi? <i>where?</i>
 *Utrobi? <i>in which place?</i></p> <p>2 Ibi, illic, istic, <i>there</i>
 Hic, <i>here</i>
 Ibidem, <i>in the same place</i>
 Alibi, <i>elsewhere</i></p> <p>3 Ubi, <i>where</i></p> <p>4 Ubi, alicubi, uspiam, <i>anywhere</i>
 Usquam, <i>anywhere at all</i></p> | <p>5 a. Ubiubi, ubicumque, <i>where-soever</i></p> <p>b. Ubivis, ubilibet, <i>where you will</i></p> <p>c. Ubique, <i>everywhere</i>
 *Utrobique, <i>in both places</i></p> <p>d. Nusquam, <i>nowhere</i>
 *Neutrubi, <i>in neither place</i></p> |
|--|---|

ADVERBS OF PLACE WHITHER.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Quo? <i>whither?</i>
 *Utro? <i>to which place?</i></p> <p>2 Eo, illuc, istuc, <i>thither</i>
 Huc, <i>hither</i>
 Eodem, <i>to the same place</i>
 Alio, <i>to another place</i></p> <p>3 Quo, <i>whither</i></p> <p>4 Quo, quopiam, <i>anywhither;</i>
 aliquo, <i>somewhither</i></p> | <p>Quoquam, <i>anywhither at all</i></p> <p>5 a. Quoquo, quocumque, <i>whither-soever</i></p> <p>b. Quovis, quolibet, <i>whither you will</i></p> <p>c. *Utroque, <i>to each place</i></p> <p>d. *Neutro, <i>to neither place.</i></p> |
|---|--|

ADVERBS OF PLACE WHENCE.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1 Unde, <i>whence?</i></p> <p>2 Inde, illinc, istinc, <i>thence</i>
 Hinc, <i>hence</i>
 Indidem, <i>from the same side</i>
 Aliunde, <i>from another side</i></p> <p>3 Unde, <i>whence</i></p> <p>4 Unde, alicunde, <i>from some side</i></p> | <p>5 a. Undeunde, Undecumque, <i>from whatever side</i></p> <p>b. Undevis, undelibet, <i>from what side you will</i></p> <p>c. Undique, <i>from every side</i>
 *Utrimque, <i>from each side</i>†</p> |
|---|---|

ADVERBS OF TIME WHEN.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 Quando? ubi? <i>when?</i></p> <p>2 Tum, tunc, <i>then</i>
 Nunc, jam, <i>now</i>
 Simul, <i>at the same time</i>
 Alias, <i>at another time</i></p> <p>3 Quum, ubi, <i>when</i></p> | <p>4 Quando, aliquando, <i>ever</i>
 Umquam, <i>ever at all</i></p> <p>5 a. Quandocumque, <i>whensoever</i></p> <p>c. Quandoque, <i>at any time</i>
 Semper, <i>always</i></p> <p>d. Numquam, <i>never</i></p> |
|--|--|

† So quā, *in what direction?* eā, hāc, aliā, quā, aliquā, quaquā, &c.
 quorsum, *whitherward?* illorsum, aliorsum, &c.
 See the series of qualls, quantus, quot, § 38 (9).

ADVERBS OF NUMBER.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Quotiens? <i>how often?</i> | 4 Aliquotiens, <i>several times</i> |
| 2 Totiens, <i>so often</i> | 5 a. Quotiescumque, <i>how often</i> |
| 3 Quotiens, (<i>as often</i>) <i>as</i> | <i>soever</i> |

ADVERBS OF MANNER.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Quomodo? quemadmodum?
ut? quam? <i>how?</i> | 3 Quomodo, quemadmodum, ut,
<i>as</i> |
| 2 Ita, sic, tam, <i>so</i>
Item, itidem, <i>in like manner</i>
Aliter, secus, <i>otherwise</i> | Ac, atque, quam, <i>as, than</i>
5 a. Utut, utcumque, quam-
<i>quam, however</i> |

ADVERBS OF CAUSE.

- 1 Cur? quare? *why? wherefore?*
 2 Ideo, propterea, idcirco, *on that account*
 3 Cur, quare, *why*; quod, quia, *because*

CORRELATION BETWEEN A DEMONSTRATIVE ADVERB AND A CONJUNCTION APPEARS ALSO IN

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Consecutive Construction:
Adeo, ita, sic, tam, tantum,
&c., <i>so, so much, &c.</i>
ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut
nemo, &c., <i>that, &c.</i> | Usque, eo, &c., <i>so long, &c.</i>
dum, donec, quoad, <i>until.</i> |
| (2) Final Construction:
Idcirco, ideo, &c., <i>for the</i>
<i>purpose, &c.</i>
ut, ne, ut ne, ne quis, &c.,
<i>that, &c.</i> | (4) Conditional Construction:
Modo, tantum, tantummo
do, <i>only, &c.</i>
si, <i>if</i> (or omitting si). |
| (3) Temporal Construction:
Tum, tunc, <i>then</i>
quum, <i>when</i>
Interea, <i>meantime</i>
dum, <i>whilst</i> | (5) Concessive Construction:
Tamen, <i>yet, nevertheless</i>
etsi, etiamsi, quamquam,
quamvis, &c., <i>although, &c.</i> |
| | (6) Comparative Construction:
Ita, perinde, proinde, simi-
liter, itidem, <i>just so, &c.</i>
quasi, ac si, ut si, &c., <i>as if,</i>
<i>&c.</i> |

IV. NUMERALS, MONEY, TIME

A. NUMERALS.

The Cardinal Numbers are those on which the other Numerals hinge (carlo, *hinge*). Unus is used in the Plural with Substantives 'Plural only': una castra, *one camp*. But for higher numbers the Distributives are used: bina castra, *two camps*.

Ordinal Numerals denote numerical rank (ordo): primus, *first*, &c.

Distributive Numerals denote so many each or at each time: Sexageni caedunt singulos, *sixty men beat each (centurion)*.—TAC. Poets often use them for the Cardinal Numbers.

Numeral Adverbs denote the *number of times* that anything happens or is done: semel, *once*; bis, *twice*; &c.

<i>Roman Symbols.</i>	<i>Cardinalia.</i>	<i>Ordinalia.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Adverbia.</i>
I.	unus	primus	singuli	semel
II.	duo	secundus or alter	bini	bis
III.	tres	tertius	terni or trini	ter
IV.	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
V.	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
VI.	sex	sextus	seni	sexies
VII.	septem	septimus	septeni	septies
VIII.	octo	octavus	octoni	octies
IX.	novem	nonus	noveni	novies
X.	decem	decimus	deni	decies
XI.	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
XII.	duodecim	duodecim	duodeni	duodecies
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredecies
XVIII.	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicensi	duodeviciens
XIX.	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevicensi	undeviciens
XX.	viginti	vicesimus	vicensi	viciens
XXI.	{ unus et vi- ginti or vi- ginti unus	{ primus et vice- simus or vice- simus primus	vicensi singuli	{ semel et vi- cens
XXX.	triginta	tricesimus	tricensi	triciens
XL.	quadraginta	quadragiesimus	quadrageni	quadragiens
L.	quingenta	quingagesimus	quingageni	quingagens
LX.	sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexagens
LXX.	septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuagens
LXXX.	octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogens
XC.	nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonagens
C.	centum	centesimus	centeni	centiens
CC.	ducenti	ducentesimus	ducenti	ducentiens
D or IO.	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingentiens
M or CIO.	mille	millesimus	singula milia	miliens
MM.	duo milia	bis millesimus	duo milia	bis miliens

e. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: Nos Tyndaritari in septemdecim populis Siciliae numeramus, *we of Tyndaris are reckoned among the 17 nations of Sicily.*—Cic. Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit, *Roscius left 13 farms.*—Cic. Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus.—PRISC.

(2) In Compound Numbers above 20, either the smaller number with *et* comes first, or the larger without *et*: Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, *Romulus reigned 37 years.*—Cic. Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur, *to men are assigned 32 teeth.*—PLIN.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complavit annos, *Gorgias of Leontini completed 107 years.*—Cic. Olympiade centesima quarta decima Lysippus fuit, *Lysippus lived in the 114th Olympiad.*—PLIN.

(4) The thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numeral

Adverbs *bis, ter, &c.*, to mille (chiefly in poetry), or by prefixing the Cardinal Numbers to milia: duo milia, tria milia, &c.

Milia is generally followed by a Genitive: but if smaller numbers intervene between milia and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: Tria milia et septingenti pedites ierunt, 3700 *infantry marched*.—LIV.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to centum milia or centena milia, as stated in the following passage: Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum milia; itaque et hodie multiplicantur haec, ut decies centena milia aut sacpius dicantur.—PLIN.

f. Unus is often used in Compound Numbers for primus.

g. The Numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of duo and unus from the next multiple of 10: duodeviginti (duodevicesimus), 18; undeviginti (undevicesimus), 19; duodetriginta (duodetricesimus), 28; undetriginta (undetricesimus), 29; &c., &c.: duodecentum (duodecentosimus), 98; undecontum (undecentesimus), 99.

B. MONEY.

a. The As (Libra), or pound of 12 ounces (unciae), was thus divided:

Uncia	= 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As.	Septunx	= 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the As.
Sextans	= 2 " $\frac{1}{6}$ "	Bes	= 8 " $\frac{2}{3}$ "
Quadrans	= 3 " $\frac{1}{4}$ "	Dodrans	= 9 " $\frac{3}{4}$ "
Triens	= 4 " $\frac{3}{8}$ "	Dextans	= 10 " $\frac{5}{6}$ "
Quincunx	= 5 " $\frac{5}{12}$ "	Deunx	= 11 " $\frac{11}{12}$ "
Semissis	= 6 " $\frac{1}{2}$ "		

b. Unciae usurae = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum

Sextantes	= $\frac{1}{6}$ " "	= 2 " "
etc.	etc.	etc.

Asses usurae = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Asses usurae were also called centesimae; and binae centesimae = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent., &c. Unciarium fenus was 1 uncia yearly per as = $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. per annum.

c. Heres ex asse . . . means heir to the whole estate.

Heres ex semisse, or .	}	" heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
Heres ex dimidia parte		
etc.		etc.

d. The Sestertius (Nummus), or Sesterce, was a silver coin equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, being $\frac{1}{4}$ of the Denarius (coin of 10 asses). Its symbol is HS.

The Sestertium (= 1000 sestertii) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Sestertia, in the Plural (also represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 sestertii.

The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) sestertii (Gen. Sing.), sestertium, or HS., denote so many 100,000 sestertii:

Thus HS.X = Sestertii decem, 10 sesterces.

HS.X = Scstertia decem, 10,000 sesterces.

HS.X = Sestertium decies, 1,000,000 sesterces.

C. TIME.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Every Roman month had three chief days: Kalendæ (Calends), Nonæ (Nones), Idus (Ides). The Calends were always the 1st day of the month; the Nonos were usually on the 5th; the Ides on the 13th; but in four months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

March, May, July, October; these are they
Make Nones the 7th, Ides the 15th day.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides. The rules are: (1) For days before the Calends subtract the day of the month from the number of days in the month increased by two; (2) For days before the Nones or Ides subtract from the day on which they fall, increased by one.

Examples.—May 31, Pridie Kalendas Junias.

„ 30, Ante diem tertium (a.d. III.) Kal. Jun.

„ 11, „ „ quintum (a.d. V.) Id. Mai.

„ 2, „ „ sextum (a.d. VI.) Non. Mai.

English Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29.
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called DIES BISEXTUS, and leap-year itself ANNUS BISEXTUS.]

V. ABBREVIATIONS.

(1) PRAENOMINA.

A. Aulus	K. Kaeso	Q. Quintus
C. } Gaius	L. Lucius	S. (Sex.) Sextus
G. }	M. Marcus	Ser. Servius
Cn. } Gnaeus	M'. Manius	Sp. Spurius
Gn. }	Mam. Mamercus	T. Titus
D. Decimus	P. Publius	Ti. (Tib.) Tiberius.

Note.—A Roman of distinction had at least three names: the Praenomen, individual name; the Nomen, name shewing the Gens or clan; and the Cognomen, surname shewing the Familiae or family. Thus, Lucius Junius Brutus expressed Lucius of the Gens Junia and Familia Brutorum. To these were sometimes added one or more Agnomina, titles either of honour (as Africanus, Macedonicus, Magnus, &c.), or expressing that a person had been adopted from another Gens, as Aemilianus, applied to the younger Scipio Africanus, who was the son of L. Paulus Aemilius, but adopted by a Scipio. The full name of the emperor Augustus (originally an Octavius) after he had been adopted by his uncle's will and adorned by the Senate with a title of honour, was Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

(2) VARIA.

A. D. Ante diem	HS. Sestertius, Sestertium	P. R. Populus Romanus
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditae	Id. Idus	Pl. Plebis
Aed. Aedilis	Imp. Imperator	Proc. Proconsul
Cal. (Kal.) Calendae	L. Libra	S. Senatus
Cos. Consul	LL. Dupondius	S. P. Q. R. Senatus
Coss. Consules	Non. Nonae	Populusque Romanus
D. Divus	O. M. Optimus Maximus	S. C. Senatusconsultum
Des. Designatus	P. C. Patres (et) Conscripti	S. D. P. Salutem dicit plurimam
Eq. Rom. Eques Romanus	P. M. Pontifex Maximus	Tr. Tribunus
F. Filius		

II. NOTES ON SYNTAX.

I. AGREEMENT. § 88-92. § 156-160.

A. The Subject (§ 88) may be any Noun-term, § 87. B. a.

Adjective (§ 89) includes Participles and Adjective Pronouns.

An Adjective agrees as Epithet with a Substantive: as Complement with any Noun-term, § 87 E.

B. Adjectives are used as Substantives (§ 156).

1. In the Masc. Sing. and Pl., *man* or *men* being implied: *amicus*, a friend; *sapiens*, a wise man; *stultus*, a fool; *boni*, good men; *multi*, many; *plerique*, most.

2. In the Neut. Sing. abstractly: *Honestum et utile*, morality and expediency.—Cic. *Triste lupus stabulis*, the wolf is a bane to the stalls.

—VERG.

3. In the Neut. Pl., *things* being implied: *multa*, many things; *omnia*, all things.

C. The term Substantive (§ 90) includes all Noun-terms.

A Substantive may be (§ 87. F.) in Apposition to any Noun-term, as Appositive Epithet or Complement.

An Appositive usually agrees in Number also with its Noun, sometimes in Gender: *Usus magister egregius.*—PLIN. *Vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est.*—CIC.

D. The use of the Relative (§ 91) may be shewn by placing it between two Noun-terms, with the former of which it agrees in Gender, Number, and Person, with the latter in Case:

Vir quem virum vides rex est (Full Form).
Vir quem vides rex est (Usual Form).
 . . . *quem virum vides rex est.*
 . . . *quem vides rex est.*

But it may refer to a Noun-term of any Person, ego, nos, tu, vos, &c.

E. Figures varying Agreement (§ 158-160):—

1. Ellipsis omits words: (1) Pronouns; *aiunt, they say*: (2) Substantives; *Falernum, Falernian* (vinum, wine), *gelida* (aqua), *cold water*; *ad Junonis, to Juno's* (templum, temple). (3) Verbs, especially the Copulants *est, sunt.* See § 158.

Emphasis throws stress on words: *Ego reges eieci, vos tyrannos introduitis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*—LIV.

2. Attraction removes Agreement from the usual word to some other: *Amantium irae amoris integratio est, the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*—TER.; where *est* agrees with the Complement *integratio*, not with the Subject *irae*.

3. Synesis occurs when words have one Gender or Number in form, another in meaning, and construction is made to agree with meaning:

Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt, the heads of the conspiracy were decapitated.—LIV. *Pars epulis onerant mensas, part load the tables with viands.*—VERG.

Singular Nouns with Plural sense; *pars, juvenus, turba, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, civitas, vulgus, etc.,* are called Collective Nouns, or Nouns of Multitude.

F. A Composite Subject (§ 92) contains two or more Noun-terms. The rule holds good, whether the Nouns are linked by Conjunctions, or without Conjunctions, or united by the Preposition *cum*.

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Quirinus with his brother Remus will give laws.—VERG.

a. A Singular Verb may be used with a Composite Subject when the Nouns form one notion: *Senatus populusque intellegit.*—CIC.

β. The Verb may agree with one of the Nouns, and be understood with the others: *Convicta est Messalina et Silius, Messalina was convicted, and Silius.*—TAC.

γ. As the first Person is prior to the second, and the second to the third, so the Masculine Gender is held in Grammar superior to the Feminine. § 92, 1. 2.

Upon Impersonal Verbs, see § 157. also § 75. &c.



II. CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT. § 93-94.

These rules show :

- (1) that the Subject of a Verb Finite is a Nominative ;
- (2) that the Subject of an Infinitive is an Accusative ;
- (3) that the Complement of a Copulative Verb, Finite or Infinitive, agrees, if a single Adjective, attributively with the Subject ; if a single Substantive, appositively with the Subject, except in a few instances (§ 108, § 127).

The Complement, in two examples of Rule § 94, follows a Finite Copulative Verb, and agrees with a Nominative Subject ; in two others it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, and agrees with a Nominative Subject ; in the last two it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, obliquely used, and agrees with an Accusative Subject.

The Verb *sum* may be completely Predicative, not Copulative, if it denotes absolute existence: *Jam seges est, ubi Troja fuit, now corn is, where Troy was.*—Ov.

Factive Verbs in the Passive Voice are Copulative. See III. D.

III. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. § 95-103.

A. When the Verb is Transitive (§ 96), the construction is often without sense until a word is added to express that on which the Verb acts. This is called the Object (or Nearer Object), and stands in the Accusative Case. *Romulus condidit, Romulus founded*, is incomplete in sense until we add *Romam, Rome*.

How to express a Transitive Active Sentence Passively, see IX. E.

B. (1) Transitive Verbs are sometimes used intransitively; *Jam verterat fortuna, fortune had now turned.*—Liv.

(2) More often Intransitive Verbs become transitive: *Flet necem filii, he weeps for his son's death.*

(3) The Compound of an Intransitive Verb is often transitive: *Hostes urbem circumsedent, the enemies surround the city.*

(4) Passive Verbs used reflexively sometimes become transitive, like Deponents: *Exuitur cornua, she puts off her horns.*—Ov. Hence such constructions as *Nodo sinus collecta fluentes, having gathered up in a knot her flowing folds.*—Verg.

C. The Verbs which take double Accusative (thing and person) (§ 98) are *doceo* (and its compounds), *rogo*, *interrogo*, *oro*, *exoro*, *posco*, *flagito*, *pereor*, and, in Horace, *laesso*. Sometimes *celo, conceal*.

In Passive Construction the Accusative of the thing remains: *Quid tu docearis a me litteras? why should you be taught letters by me?*

D. Factive Verbs (§ 99) are such as may be said to make (*facere*) a thing to be of a certain character, by deed, word, or thought:

(1) *facio*, *efficio*, *reddo*, *praesto*, *ereo*, *lego*, *eligo*, &c.; (2) *dico*, *voco*, *memoro*, *praedico*, *nomino*, *nuncupo*, *declaro*, *usurpo*, *appello*, *saluto*, &c.; (3) *aestimo*, *numero*, *credo*, *existimo*, *puto*, *duco*, *judico*, *habeo*, *censeo*, *agnosco*, *invenio*, *reperio*, *deprehendo*, &c., &c.

They are Active forms of those which in the Passive are Copulative Verbs, and Factive Construction in the Passive becomes Copulative:

Fis dea a nobis. Fortuna: A Romulo urbs sua Roma vocata est.

E. The Accusative of Respect is seldom used in prose, except when it is a Pronoun or an Adjective: *Illud doleo; Hoc laetor; Cetera assentior Crasso, in other things I agree with Crassus.*—CIC.

F. Many Grammarians deem the original force of the Accusative Case to be, that it marks the limit or object of motion. § 101.

The Prepositions *in, ad*, are generally used by prose writers, if motion to other places than towns or small islands is mentioned.

IV. THE DATIVE CASE. § 104–109.

A. Words whose sense is incomplete without reference to a Recipient (§ 105) are called Trajective. Thus *carus, dear*, necessarily implies, *dear to some one*; *dare, to give*, necessarily implies not only a thing given, but a person to whom it is given. Trajective words take a Dative of this object of reference. Verbs of this sort, if they take a Dative only (as *parco, faveo, irascor, &c.*), are purely Trajective: if they take an Accusative also, they are both Trajective and Transitive, such as *do, narro, spondeo, &c.*

B. The fundamental notion of the Dative (§ 106) seems to be Nearness, with its opposite Remoteness. The First Class, then, of Trajective words is composed of those which contain the ideas of *nearness and remoteness, presence and absence, affinity and non-affinity, custom and strangeness, fitness and unfitness, likeness and unlikeness, agreement and disagreement, union and disunion, comparison and contrast*. Next, *shewing and being shewn* is the bringing near or being brought near to the eye, ear, or (generally) to the mind. Herein we include the Second Class, words of *utterance and silence, narration and concealment, affirmation and denial, evidence and obscurity, persuasion and dissuasion*. We are hence led on to the Third Class, a large body of words which express application or exhibition with the attendant notion of *favour or disfavour*. These comprise words which express *profit and harm, kindness and unkindness, bounty and stint, indulgence and grudging, help and obstruction, pleasing and displeasing, pardon and resentment, flattery and reviling, blessing and malediction, compliance and resistance, promise and menace, gift, loan, present, payment, dedication, and refusal; delivery and withdrawal; faith and infidelity, trust and distrust, lawfulness and unlawfulness, ease and difficulty*. There are yet a few words, which share something of the character of both the two last-mentioned classes, and may conveniently form a Fourth Class. These are words which express *rule and subservience, command and obedience*.

C. The reason why many Verbs compounded with Particles (§ 106 a.) become Trajective, is, that the Particle confers upon them one or other of the notions enumerated above: most frequently that of Nearness.

D. The reason why a Dative of that *for which* anything is or happens (Dativus Commodi vel Incommodi, § 107) may be attached to almost any predication, is because almost any action or state may be attended with some result to some Recipient; it may be *for* or *against* some one's interest; in some way *interesting* to some one. Thus *nubere* means 'to take the bridal veil,' and a bride is said, '*nubere viro*,' 'to take the veil *for* her husband,' that is, 'to marry him.' *Vacare* means 'to be void,' or 'empty': hence, 'to be disengaged *for*,' that is, 'to have leisure *for*:'

as, vacare philosophiae. Here, too, may be ranked the Ethic Dative, the Dative with *sum*, with Participles, Gerunds, &c.

E. Some Adjectives in the classes named prefer the construction of ad with Accusative to that of the Dative: such are *natus*, *aptus*, *utilis*, *idoneus*, *paratus*, *rudis*, &c.: *Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus*, *we are born to praise and glory.*—CIC.

Others use *in*, *erga*, *adversus*: *Acer in hostem*, *spirited against the foe.*—VERG. *Benignus erga te fui*, *I was kind towards you.*—PLAUT.

Communis, *proprius*, *affinis*, *similis*, *par*, and some other Adjectives, take a Dative or a Genitive Case.

F. Some Verbs belonging in sense to the classes named above (*B*) take Accusative and not Dative: *juvo*, *jubeo*, *laedo*, *rego*, *guberno*. *Multos castra juvant*, *the camp delights many.* *Animum rege*, *rule the temper.*—HOR.

Others use Dative or Accusative: *tempero*, *moderor*.

The construction of Verbs varies considerably, owing to the use of Prepositions and other causes. Thus we find *donare alicui munus* and *donare aliquem munere*, *invidere alicui*, *invidere rem alicui*, *invidere re aliquem*.

G. The English Prepositions chiefly used in rendering the Latin Dative are *to* and *for*. But after some Adjectives and Verbs (*iratus*, *succenseo*, &c.) *with* must be used; after some Verbs (*disto*, *aufero*, &c.), *from*; after many Compound Verbs, *upon*, *into*, or *against*. Others, *parco*, *placeo*, *displaceo*, *medeor*, &c., are rendered without an English Preposition.

H. The Dative after a Finite Passive Verb is rare: *Non intellegor ulli*, *I am not understood by anybody.*—OV. So is the Dative after a Verb of motion: *It clamor caelo*, *a cry ascends to heaven.*—VERG.

V. THE ABLATIVE CASE. § 110-125.

A. When the Ablative stands without a Latin Preposition, it is rendered with the help of various English Prepositions; namely, I. Cause, *by*, *for*, *from*, *through*, *with*, *at*. II. Instrument, *with*, *by*. III. Manner, *in*, *with*, *by*. IV. Condition, *with*, *in*, *upon*. V. Quality, *of*, *with*. VI. Respect, *in*, *by*, *with*. VII. Value or Price, *at*, *for*, *of*, *with*. VIII. Measure, *by*, or no Preposition. IX. Matter, *of*, *in*, *with*, *from*, *upon*, *for*, or no Preposition. X. Time, *at*, *in*, *within*, or no Preposition. XI. *A.* Place by which, *by*, *along*, *upon*, *through*. *B.* Place where, *at*, *in*, *upon* (*humi*). *G.* Place from which, *from*. XII. (See Prepositions). XIII. Separation and Origin, *from*, *of*. XIV. Thing compared, *than*.

B. The use of the Simple Ablative in most of these meanings is varied considerably by the introduction of Latin Prepositions. Thus Cause may be expressed by *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *prae*; also by *ob*, *per*, *propter*, with Accusative. Agent requires *a*, *ab*; while Instrument is without Preposition. Manner without an Epithet requires '*cum*,' (except in a few phrases, such as, *vi*, *fraude*, *jure*, *injuriâ*, *ritu*, *silentio*, *arte*, *ordine*, &c.). Thus, *I speak with grief*, or *he writes with diligence*, cannot be rendered *dolore loquor*, *diligentiâ scribit*, but *cum dolore loquor* (or *dolens loquor*), *cum diligentia scribi* (or *diligenter scribit*).

If an Epithet is joined to this Ablative, the Preposition is often used, often omitted; and observation must determine the choice of construction: Cato *suminā contentione dixit*, *Cato spoke with the utmost energy*, —Cic. *Magnā eum eūrā atque diligentīā scripsit*, *he wrote with great care and diligence*.—Cic.

C. The Case of Quality, whether Ablative or Genitive, requires an Epithet. § 115.

D. The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives implying *sale, purchase, dearness, cheapness, cost, &c.*

Muto, I change, may have Accus. of what is left, and Abl. of what is taken, or (in poetry) the converse. Thus, *mutare urbem exilio*, and *mutare urbe exilium* may equally mean '*to quit the city and go into banishment*.'

Pretio is often dropt: *magno, dear; parvo, vili, cheap*. § 117.

E. The Ablative of Measure defines Verbs and Adjectives of Extent and Degree, especially Comparative and Superlative Words.

For this purpose in particular are used the Prouominal Ablatives *hoc, eo, quo, altero, tanto, quanto, aliquanto*: also *paulo, multo, duplo, dimidio, nihilo, nimio, &c.*: *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, *the more they have, the more they desire*. § 118.

F. The use of Prepositions in defining Time (§ 120) is frequent:

Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit, *the sun makes two turns in each year*.—Cic. *De die*, *before the close of day*. *De nocte*, *before the close of night*. *De multā nocte*, *long before the close of night*. *Sub vesperum*, *on the approach of evening*. *Diem ex die expecto*, *I wait day after day*. In is usually prefixed to an Ablative of time when a numeral Adverb follows: *Quidam oves in anno bis tondent*, *some shear sheep twice a year*.—VARR.

G. 1. Generally *Place where* (§ 121 B.) is expressed with *in*: *in portu navigo*.—SEN. In is omitted in certain phrases:

Loco (in the stead), *multis locis, pluribus locis, &c.*; *hoc libro, alio libro, &c.*; *terrā marique*; or where *totus* is used: *totā Asiā*, *in all Asia*, *dextrā (parte)*, *on the right hand*, *laevā, sinistrā*, *on the left hand*.

Poets are more free in the omission: *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent*, *in forests and fields and roads lie revolting corpses*.—OV. But this license needs discrimination.

When a work is quoted *in* is used: *in Iliade Homeri*; *in Andriā Terentii*; *in Gorgiā Platonis*; but when the author only is cited, *apud*; *apud Homerum*; *apud Terentium*; *apud Platonem (in Homer, &c.)*.

2. That the seeming Genitive, *Romae, Corinthi, &c.* (§ 121 B. a.), is not strictly such, was perceived by ancient Grammarians, who call it an Adverb. But if we notice that it ends in *i*, *Romai (Romae)*, *militai (militiae)*, *Mileti*, *domi*, *humi*, *belli*; and compare the old forms of place in the Third Declension ending in *i*, *ruri*, *Lacedaemoni*.—NEP.; *Carthagini*.—LIV.; *Tiburi*.—CIC., &c.; we cannot doubt the original existence in the Latin language, as in the Sanskrit, of a Locative Case ending in *i* Singular, in *s* Plural.

3. Prepositions are much used with names of towns:

In Epheso est. *In Ephesum abii*. *Ex Epheso huc litteras misi*, *I sent a letter to this place from Ephesus*.—PLAUT. *Has litteras a Brundisio dedit*, *this letter he dated from Brundisium*.—CIC.

H. The usage of Verbs and Participles of Separation and Origin (§ 123) must be carefully observed, some of them taking or omitting the Preposition in prose: arceo, cedo, moveo, pello, prohibeo, summoveo, removeo: others requiring a Preposition in prose, but not in poetry; alieno, discedo, disjungo, dispello, disto, divello, repello, reporto, rejicio, segrego, secerno, separo, &c. The chief Participles are natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, editus, oriundus, &c.

K. 1. The Case of the word with which the Ablative is compared (§ 124) is much oftener a Nominative than an Accusative. In comparison with other cases quam must be used: Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili, *to none more a cause of weeping than to thee, Vergilius.*—HOR. Flagiti magis nos pudet quam erroris, *we are more ashamed of the crime than of the blunder.*—CIC. And, in general, for the sake of perspicuity: Segnius homines bona quam mala sentiunt, *men feel blessings less keenly than evils.*—LIV.

2. After plus, amplius, minus, an ellipse of quam often occurs before Numerals: Romani paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, *of the Romans rather more than 600 fell.*—LIV. Unus is omitted: Quinctius tecum plus annum vixit, *Quinctius lived with you more than a year.*—CIC.

L. 1. The Ablative Absolute (§ 125) being an abridged Clause, the Participle may often be transformed into a Finite Verb with Conjunction. Thus, in the example, Regibus exactis = postquam reges exacti sunt.

2. A common instance of Substantive put Absolutely with Substantive is that of *consule* or *consulibus*: Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse, *in the consulship of Caninius you must know that nobody dined.*—CIC.

VI. THE GENITIVE CASE. § 126-136.

A. 1. The Genitive is Subjective when it limits a Noun like an Attribute; Objective when it limits it like an Object. It is the same thing to say, Sullanus exercitus, or Sullae exercitus, *the army of Sulla*; flamen Martialis, or flamen Martis, *the priest of Mars*; on the other hand, eupido pecuniae is nearly the same as cupere pecuniam. But Adjectives are even used for the Objective Genitive: bellum regium for bellum contra regem; timor externus for timor exterorum. So the Possessive Pronouns; Desiderium vestrum ferre non possum, *I cannot bear the want of you.*—CIC. 'Native of a place' is expressed by an Adjective derived from the place: Dionysius Halicarnassus, for Dionysius Halicarnassensis natus, *Dionysius of Halicarnassus.*

2. The Possessive Genitive is rendered in English either by *of* or the Genitive in 's: Philippi filius, 'son of Philip,' or 'Philip's son.'

3. Instar (an undeclined Substantive meaning *likeness*) stands (with a Genitive) in apposition to a Substantive: Instar montis equum, *a horse resembling a mountain.*—VERG.

B. (1) Some suppose interest to be for inter rem est, rēfert for rem fert, and mea, &c., to be corruptions of meam, &c (§ 129).

(2) These Verbs may be qualified by the Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti: Utriusque nostrum magni interest ut te videam, *it is of great importance to both of us that I see you.*—CIC.

C. 1. The Gentives Rei Distributao (§ 130) and Rei Demensae (§ 131) are so far the same, as that each is a divided whole; but the former is numerically divided, the latter quantitatively: the former is Plural unless a Collective Noun; the latter usually Singular.

The Partitive words which govern the former Genitive are—

(α) Pronominals: alius, alter, uter, uterque, utervis, uterlibet, ullus, nullus, nemo, plerique, multi, pauci, ceteri, reliqui, solus, qui, quis, quicumque, quisquis, quisque, unusquisque, tot, quot, quocumque, quotusquisque, quisnam, quisquam, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, &c.

(β) Numerals, Cardinal and Ordinal: unus, primus: duo, secundus, &c.; also princeps, medius.

(γ) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives; the former distributing two things: Major Neronum; or one class into two parts: Avium loquaciores, *the noisier sort of birds*.—PLIN. Also Superlative Adverbs.

(δ) Any Adjective, Participle, or Substantive which can imply a distributive meaning: Sancte deorum; lecti juvenum; piscium feminae.

2. Partitives are sometimes attracted in Gender to the Subject:

Indus est omnium fluminum maximus, *the Indus is the largest of all rivers*.—CIC.

Or varied by Synesis: Dulcissimorum rerum, *dearest of beings*.—HON.

3. A Collective Noun is distributed:

Plato totius Graeciae doctissimus, *Plato the most learned man of all Greece*.—CIC.

4. This Genitive forms a Complement:

Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium, *thou too shalt become one of the renowned fountains*.—HON.

5. Adverbs of Place, ubi, quo, eo, nusquam, &c., are Partitively used with the Genitives gentium, locorum, terrarum, &c.:

Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*.—LIV.

6. Primus, ultimus, summus, imus, extremus, and other like Adjectives are used as Epithets with Partitive force:

Primā luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur, *at break of day the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus*.—CAES.

D. Among Quantitative words governing a Genitive (§ 131) are:

Nihil, satis, affatim, abunde, nimis, partim, minus, minimum, parum, aliud, id, illud, hoc, idem, quod, quid, aliquid, quidquid, quidquam, multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, aliquantum, nimium, dimidium.

They are usually rendered in English as agreeing with the thing measured: nimium pecuniae (*too much money*); nihil mali (*no evil*).

They may also be followed by the Genitive of an Adjective of the Second Declension; but an Adjective of the Third is commonly in the same Case with the word of Quantity: Ne quid falsi dicere audeas, ne quid veri non audeas, *you should dare to say nothing false, nothing true not dare to say*.—CIC. Nec viget quicquam simile aut secundum, *and nothing exists like or in second rank*.—HON.

E. Among poetic Genitives (§ 135) are these:

(1) Cause: Laudat leti juvenem, *he praises the youth for his death*.

(2) Respect: O seri studiorum, *O late in your studies*.

(3) Dominion: Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum, *Daunus ruled over rustic tribes*.

VII. THE VERB INFINITIVE. § 140-141.

A. The Infinitive when used in direct predication (§ 140, 2.) is called the Historic Infinitive. It appears in poetry as well as prose, (a) in passages descriptive of strong emotion; (b) where various actions take place simultaneously or in immediate sequence; (c) in actions interrupted, and from time to time repeated. It is analogous to the ellipse of the Copula; in fact, both constructions occur together:

Ceterum facies totius negoti varia, incerta, foeda atque miserabilis; dispersa suis pars cedere, alii insequi: neque signa neque ordines observare: ubi quemquo periculum ceperat, ibi resistere ac propulsare; arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere, *now the aspect of the whole affair was confused, indecisive, shocking, and pitiable. Parties scattered from their comrades were some retiring, others advancing; observing neither standards nor ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen were intermingled; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed all.*—SALL. This Infinitive is Imperfect.

B. 1. The Infinitive is Prolatively used when it carries on the construction of Verbs which express ability, desire, custom, beginning, ceasing, seeming, being thought, being said, &c.:

Possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, volo, nolo, malo, avco, cupio, gestio, amo, soleo, coepi, incipio, statuo, pergo, conor, meditor, paro, cesso, desino, videor, putor, credor, feror, dicor, trador, memoror, &c.

Among these Verbs, those which are Copulative (videor, credor, existimor, putor, dicor, narror, feror, trador, reperior, arguor, &c.) are used personally with Infinitive rather than impersonally with Accusative and Infinitive. Videtur errasse Cicero is better than Videtur errasse Ciceronem; Dicitur Homerus caecus fuisse, than Dicitur Homerum caecum fuisse.

The Participle Passivo is often found after such Verbs with ellipse of esse: Fertur Prometheus coactus, &c., *Prometheus is said to have been compelled*, &c.—HOR. Manlius locutus fertur, LIV.

2. The construction of an Infinitive with Adjectives abounds in poetry, especially lyric:

Audax omnia perpeti, *bold to endure all things.*—HOR. Fruges consumere nati, *born to consume the fruits.*—HOR.

In the best prose it is used but with few words; Paratus, assuetus, &c.; but Tacitus adopts it freely.

~C. Under the Dative Gerund (§ 141, 3.) note the phrase, non esse solvendo, *to be insolvent*; and the use of the Dative Gerund and Gerundive in describing functions of office: Triumviri agro dando, *triumvirs for assigning land*, &c.

D. The Transitive Gerund is not always attracted (§ 143):

Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, *I am rapt with the desire of seeing your sires.*—CIC.

~ Especially when a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective is the Object:

Pars honesti versatur in tribuendo suum cuique, *one branch of morality lies in giving each his own.*—CIC. Parva non contemnendo majores nostri maximam hanc rem fecerunt, *by not despising small things our ancestors made this commonwealth very great.*—LIV.

But, as a general rule, the Gerundive attraction is used.



VIII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. § 145.

A. Personal and Possessive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be used reflexively; that is, they may be referred to a Subject of *their own* Person. But *se* and *suus* differ from the rest, inasmuch as they cannot be used unless there be a Noun of their own (the Third) Person, expressed or understood, to which they are referred. Although we can say *amat me, he loves me, amat te, he loves thee*; we cannot say, *amo se, amas se, but amo eum, I love him, amas eum, thou lovest him*; not, *culpo suum factum, but culpo ejus factum. I blame his deed.*

B. The reference of *se* or *suus* to the Object is not ambiguous

(a) If the Pronoun is an adjunct to the Subject, as in the first and third examples under § 145, a;

(b) If the Subject is not of the Third Person, as in the 2nd example;

(c) If the context shows that the Pronoun cannot be referred to the Grammatical Subject: *Scipio suas res Syracusanis restituit, Scipio restored to the Syracusans their property.*—LIV. To suppose that Scipio restored his own property to the Syracusans would be absurd.

The Object to which *se, suus*, are referred, usually precedes: except the Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, which, if so used, generally follows them. *Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, his own character moulds each man's fortune.*—NEP.

When *se, suus*, would be improper, in some places is used the Pronoun *ipse*, in others the Pronoun *ipse*: *Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu, Chilius requests you and I at his request.*—CIC. *Caesar milites incusavit cur de sua virtute et de ipsius diligentia desperarent, Caesar reproachfully asked his troops why they despaired of their own valour and of his carefulness.*—CAES.

IX. ADDITAMENTA MEMORABILIA.

A. Negatives:—

Non, haud, deny: ne prohibits. *Haud* is chiefly used with Adjectives and Adverbs: *res haud dubia; haud temere, &c.* And with a few Verbs: *haud scio, haud dubito.*

Ne . . . quidem has the emphatic word or words between the Particles: *as, Ne tu quidem, not even you.* Either the Verb precedes with another Negative: *Non praetercundum est ne id quidem, even that should not be passed over.*—CIC.; or it follows without one: *Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo, I will not appeal even to Cato.*—CIC. *Nedum*, with Subjunctive, shows that something is denied a fortiori, when compared with what was denied before. See § 147.

The Pronominal words *quisquam, ullus, umquam, usquam, &c.*, are used with a Negative or Dubitative Particle: *non, haud, si, num, &c.*, *quisquam, ullus, &c.* The Negative is contained in *nemo (ne-homo), nullus (ne-ullus), numquam, nusquam, neququam, nequaquam, &c.*

In Negative Consecutive Clauses are used *ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus, ut numquam, ut nusquam, &c.*; but in Final Clauses *ne, ut ne, ne quis, ut ne quis, ne quando, ut ne quando, ne quo, ut ne quo, &c.*

Non quod (generally), *non quo* (always), take a Subjunctive Verb.

For *et nemo*, write *nec quisquam*; for *et nihil*, *neque quicquam*; for *et nullus*, *neque ullus*; for *et numquam*, *neque umquam, &c.*; for *ali non*, write *nego*.

Neque (nec) is used for et non, except when the negative emphasis falls on a single word: Quaestio difficilis est et non profutura.

Non nihil, *something*; nihil non, *everything*; non numquam, *sometimes*; numquam non, *always, &c.*; non potui non ire, *I could not but go*.

B. Single and Double Questions.

a. Single: Nonnō expects the answer *Yes*; num, the answer *No*; -nē is indifferent; an often implies *surprise*, expecting a negative answer.

b. Double. The forms are:

utrum	an (<i>or</i>)
num	an (<i>or</i>)
-ne	an (<i>or</i>)
—	an, anne (<i>or</i>).

A negation in the second member is annon or necne.

a. Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere? What sort of thing is your mind? can you tell?—Cic.

An tu me tristem esse putas? *Do you think I am downcast?—PLAUT.*

Num negare audes? *Do you venture to deny?—Cic.*

Canis nonne similis lupo est? *Is not a dog like a wolf?—Cic.*

b. Haec utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt? Are these the tokens of one who abounds or lacks?—Cic.

Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis? *Have you two countries, or is this your common country?—Cic.*

Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio? *Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?—Cic.*

Quaeram justum sit necne poema, *I will enquire whether it be a true poem or not.—Hor.*

C. Prepositions:

a. Tenus follows its Case, which is often a Genitive: Tauro tenus *as far as Mount Taurus*; nutricum tenus, *as far as the breasts*.

b. Ante, circa, circum, circiter, citra, extra, intra, juxta, pone, post, prope, supra, ultra, clam, coram, palam, super, subter, may be used as Adverbs.

c. Among idiomatic Phrases formed by Prepositions, observe: (1) *Ad*: ad tempus, *for a time*; ad multam noctem, *till late at night*; ad nnum, *to a man*; ad tibiam canere, *to sing to the flute*; ad hoc, *furthermore*; ad extremum, *at the last*; ad summum, *in fine*; ad verbum, *word for word*; ad unguem, *to a nicety*; ad amussim, *accurately*; ad decem annos, *ten years hence*; servi ad remum, *slaves for rowing*; ad iudices, *before the judges*; insignis ad laudem, *eminent in renown*; nihil ad te, *nothing compared with you*. (2) *Per*: per noctem, *during the night*; per litteras, *by letter*; per jocum, *in jest*; per deos te oro, *I pray you by the gods*; per me licet, *I give leave*; res per se expetenda, *a thing in itself desirable*. (3) *A, ab*: a fronte, *in the van*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a millibus passuum duobus, *two miles off*; prope abest a mari, *he is near the sea*; philosophus a Platone, *a Platonic philosopher*; hoc a me facit, *this is on my side*; proximus a rege, *next to the king*; ab animo aeger sum, *I am sick at heart*; a doctrinā instructus, *well informed*; servus a pedibus, *a footman*; a manu, *amanuensis*. (4) *De*: de nocte, *in the night*; de die, *in the daytime*; de meo, *from my own purse*; de

marmore, of marble; de more, according to custom; de industria, on purpose; de novo, afresh; justis de causis, for good reasons; de Parthis triumphavit, he triumphed over the Parthians. (5) E, ex: diem ex die, day after day; ex pedibus laborat, he has the gout in his feet; e republicā, for the good of the state; heres ex asse, universal heir; ex improviso, by surprise; ex tempore, offhand; e vestigio, suddenly; e regione Massiliae, opposite Marseilles. (6) Prae: prae me beatus es, you are happy compared with me; prae dolore tacet, he is silent from grief. (7) Pro: pro foribus, before the door; pro certo, for a fact; pro viribus, according to one's powers; pro tuā humanitate, such is your courtesy; pro re natā, in existing circumstances; pro eo ac potui, according to my ability. (8) In: a. frumentum binis assibus in modum, corn at two asses a peck; dormire in lucem, to sleep till daylight; vocat me ad cenam in hortos in proximum diem, he invites me to dine the next day in his pleasure-grounds; in hunc modum locutus est, he spoke in this wise; in praesens, for the time being; in horas, from hour to hour; in aeternum, for ever; in universum, generally; in vicem, in turns. B. in incerto, in doubt; in praesenti, at this moment; hic non modo in aere alieno nullo, sed in suis nummis multis est, this man is not only out of debt, but has much ready money of his own; filius in manu patris, a son in his father's power; in tuā manu hoc est, this is in your power.

D. Participles:

a. The Participles are important elements in Latin, as in Greek, construction. But the Latin language is less rich in Participles than the Greek.

b. A Participle is the Attribute of one that acts, or has acted, or will act; of one that is being acted on, or has been acted on, or will be acted on: to which we must add, of one that is meet for being acted on. A Greek Verb regularly and fully conjugated has Participles (including the Verbal in *τέρος*) representing all these categories; but Latin Verbs with Active and Passive Conjugation have the first, third, fifth, and seventh (the Present Act., Future Act., Perfect Pass., and Gerundive) Participles, but want the second, fourth, and sixth, that is, the Perfect Active, Present Pass., and Future Pass. Participles. For the Gerundive must not be regarded as Future, though it may in some places contain the notion of future time.

c. Deponent Verbs Intransitive have three Participles: Present and Future, both of which are Active in form and sense, and Perfect, which is Passive in form, but [usually] Active in sense: labor, labens, lapsurus, lapsus. Transitive Deponents add the Gerundive in *du*: patior, patiens, passurus, passus, patiendus.

d. The want of a Perfect Participle Act., in Active Verbs, is supplied in Latin either by the Finite Verb Active, with Relative or Participle, or by an Ablative Absolute Passive:

Tarquinium regem qui non tulerim, Sicinium feram? *Having refused to endure Tarquin as king, shall I endure Sicinius?*—Liv. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix a se manus abstinuit, *Alexander, having slain Clitus, hardly refrained from suicide.*—Cic. Pompeius, captis Hierosolymis, victor ex illo fano nihil attigit, *Pompeius, having taken Jerusalem, in the very hour of victory, meddled with nothing belonging to that temple.*—Cic.



c. The want of a Present Participle Passive is supplied by the Finite Passive Verb with Relative or Particle: as, *Pueri, qui—quum—dum docentur, discunt* = Greek *οἱ παῖδες διδασκόμενοι μαθάνουσι*, *Children by being taught learn*. Rarely the Perf. Participle takes a Present Passive sense: *Sperata victoria* (Liv.) = *victoria quae speratur*.

f. A Future Participle Passive is not often used even in Greek. In Latin the Finite Verb with Relative stands for it: *Grata superveniet quae non sperabitur hora*, *Welcome will arrive the hour that shall be never hoped for*.—Hor.

g. The Perfect Participles of some Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs may occasionally be rendered as Present Active: *ausus, asus, diffusus, gavisus, ratus, solitus, usus, veritus*:

Caesar, veritus ne noctu hostes profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet, *Caesar, fearing the enemy would escape in the night, ordered two legions to keep watch under arms*.—Caes. See § 62 Note.

h. Many Participles are used as mere Adjectives: *neglégens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, venerandus, tremendus, &c.*

Many appear as Substantives. Such are, *amans, adolescens, sponsus; nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum, &c.*

The nouns, *man, men, thing, &c.*, are frequently to be understood with Participles: *Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui*, *The body of a sleeping person often lies as of one dead*.—Cic. *Grande locuturi nebulas Helicone legunto*, *They that would utter a sublime strain must cull mists from Helicon*.—Pens. *Male parva male dilabuntur, Ill gotten, ill go*.—Cic. *Beatos duco, qui aut faciunt scribenda, aut scribunt loquenda*, *I deem them happy, who either do things fit to be written, or write things fit to be spoken*.—Plin. See § 142. Also § 107 d.

E. Active and Passive Construction:

a. When an Active Transitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, the Object becomes Subject, and the Subject becomes Ablative of the Agent:

ACT. *Egrege consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egrege ab consule res gesta est.*

The consul conducted the affair excellently.—Liv.

b. When an Active Intransitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, that Construction is Impersonal; the Subject becoming Ablative of the Agent.

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*

The enemy fought steadily.—Caes.

c. If the Active Verb had a Genitive, Dative, or Ablative Case with it, the Passive Construction retains that Case:

ACT. *Medicinae nos indigemus.*

PASS. *Medicinae a nobis indiget.*

We need medicine.—Cic.

ACT. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

PASS. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.*

They cannot hurt me.—Cic.

ACT. Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos aequum est.
 PASS. Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis aequum est.
It is fair for you to abandon strife and wrangling.—LIV.

(a) The Ablative of the Agent, like a Pronoun Subject, is often understood in the Impersonal Construction; *Itur in antiquam silvam, They go into the ancient forest.*—VERG. *Nunc est bibendum, Now we must drink.*—HOR.

(b) Hence it appears that Passive Verbs govern the same Cases as Active Verbs, except only the Accusative of the Object.

(c) Quasi-Passive Verbs (§ 72) have the construction of Verbs Passive; *Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit, The witness was beaten with cudgels by the defendant.*—QUINT. *Malo a cive spoliari quam ab hoste venire, I would rather be stript by a citizen, than be sold by a foe.*—QUINT.

F. Summary of Impersonal Construction:

a. Case-construction.

- (1) Accusative of Person with Genitive of Thing:
Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret. § 134.
- (2) Accusative of the Object:
Oportet, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, are Transitive.
- (3) Dative:
Libet, licet, liquet, patet, accidit, contingit, convenit, evenit, expedit, placet, restat, vacat, opus est, necesse est, are Transitive.
- (4) *Ad* with Accusative: *attinet, pertinet, conducit.*

b. Subject-construction.

- (1) Verb-noun Infinitive:
Oportet, opus est, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, libet, licet, attinet, pertinet, contingit, convenit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, vacat, delectat, juvat, interest, refert, necesse est.
- (2) Infinitive Clause (Enuntiatio Obliqua):
Oportet, opus est, decet, dedecet, licet, liquet, patet, attinet, pertinet, accidit, contingit, convenit, placet, praestat, restat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert, necesse est.
- (3) Subjunctive Clause with *ut* (for Infinitive Clause):
Oportet, opus est, licet, accidit, contingit, evenit, est, fit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, interest, refert, necesse est.
- (4) Subjunctive Clause omitting *ut*:
Oportet, licet, necesse est.
- (5) Indicative Clause with *quod* (for Infinitive Clause):
Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret, accidit, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert.



(6) Subject included in the meaning of the Verb :

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret: also Impersonals implying changes of season and weather: pluit, tonat, fulgurat, &c., and Passive Impersonals. See *E. b. c.*

(a) The following Deponent Perfects are occasionally used :

Pertaesum est; pigitum est; puditum est; miseritum est; libitum est; licitum est; placitum est.

(b) The following Verbs joined with Impersonal Infinitives become Impersonal: coepit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit: Pigere eum facti coepit, *he began to be sorry for the act.*—JUST. Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest, *the highest things cannot be reached, except from beginnings.*—QUINT.

G. Summary of Rules for Time, Place, and Space :

a. (1) Time *during* which: §§ 102. 103. 120.

Accusative; Accus. with *per*; rarely Ablative.

(2) Time *at* which, *within* which, &c.: §§ 120. 122.

Ablative; Prepositions with their Cases.

b. (1) Place *where*: § 121. A. B. 122.

Ablative with *in*; Accusative with *ad* or *apud*.

But if town, small island, or domus, humus, militia, bellum, rus:

Singular Case in *ae, i* or *e*; Plural Case in *is* or *ibus* without a Preposition. Romae, militiae, Corinthi, domi, humi, belli, ruri, Tibure, Athenis, Gadibus, &c.

(2) Place *whither*: §§ 101. 103.

Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c.:

Accusative without Preposition usually.

(3) Place *whence*: §§ 121 C. 122.

Ablative with *ab* or *ex*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c.:

Ablative without Preposition usually.

c. (1) Space intervening: §§ 102 (2). 118.

Accusative; Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei, *I was one day's journey distant from Amanus.*—CIC.

Or Ablative of Measure; Aesculapii templum quinque milibus passuum ab Epidauro distat, *the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from Epidaurus.*—LIV.

(2) Space traversed: § 102

Accusative; Milia tum pransi tria repimus, *then after dining we creep on three miles.*—HOR.

(3) Space of measurement :

Accusative, § 102; or Ablative, § 118; or Genitive of Quality; Arcus latas pedum decem facito, *you must make barn-floors ten feet wide.*—COLUM.



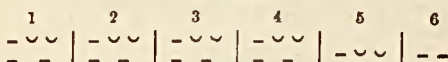
III. NOTES ON PROSODY.

METRE:—

A. (a) Dactylic Hexameter or Senarius.

This Metre has six feet. The first four may be Dactyls or Spondees. The fifth must be a Dactyl (rarely a Spondee). The sixth a Spondee.

Scheme.



Examples.

1. Sicēlī|dēs Mū|sae || paū|lō mā|jōrā cǎ|nēmus.
2. Nōn ōm|nēs ār|bustā || jū|vānt hūmī|lēsqūē mŷ|rīcae.

A break in the words, called *Caesura*, is usually made after the first syllable of the third foot, as after *-sae*, in (1). This is called a *strong* *Caesura*. If the break occurs after the second syllable of a Dactyl, as after *-ta* in (2), it is called a *weak* *Caesura*. Occasionally, the chief *Caesura* occurs after the first syllable of the fourth foot, as in the following verse:

Clāmō|rēs sīmūl | hōrrēn | dōs || ād | sīdērā | tōllit.

The Heroic Measure of Epic poets, Virgil, Lucan, &c., consists of Dactylic Hexameters only.

(b) Dactylic Pentameter:

This Verse consists of two parts, called *Penthemimers*, which are kept distinct. The first *Penthemimer* contains two feet (Dactyls or Spondees) and a long syllable. The second contains also two feet (both Dactyls) and a long syllable.

Scheme.



Example.

Tū pătēr | ēt mā|tēr || tū mihī | frătēr ē|rās

This Verse is not used alone, but follows an Hexameter in the *Elegiac Distich*:

Donec eris felix, multos numerois amicos.
Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

The chief *Elegiac* poets are Ovid, Tibullus, and Propertius.

B. (a) Iambic Trimeter or Senarius:

This Metre has six feet. Each may be an Iambus:

Sūs | ēt ip|sā Ro|mā vī|rībūs | rūit.

But a Spondee may stand in the first, third, and fifth foot; and (rarely) a Dactyl or Anapaest (— — —) in the first. A Tribrach (— — —) sometimes takes the place of an Iambus, except in the two last feet.

Scheme.

1	2	3	4	5	6
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —

Examples.

Lābūn|tūr āl|tis || in|tērīm | rīpīs | āquae.
 Cānīdī|ā brēvī|būs || im|plīcā|tā vī|pēris.
 Pōsītōs|quē vēr|nās || dī|tis ēx|āmēn | dōmus.

The usual Caesura is after the first syllable of the third foot. Another, less usual, is after the first syllable of the fourth foot;

Ībē|ricīs | pērūs|tē || fū|nībūs | lātus.

The Trimeter may form a distinct measure.

(b) Iambic Dimeter.

This Verse leaves out the third and fourth feet of the Trimeter, with which it is used to form an Iambic Distich;

Pātēr|nā rū|rā bō|būs ēx|ercēt | sūis,
 Sōlū|tūs ōm|nī fē|nōre.

Horace uses this and also the single Trimeter in his Epodes.

C. The Sapphic Stanza:

This Stanza contains four lines. The three first are the same Verse repeated (Sapphic Minor). The fourth is called Versus Adonius

Scheme.

1. — —	— —	— — —	— —	— —
2. — —	— —	— — —	— —	— —
3. — —	— —	— — —	— —	— —
4.		— — —	— —	

Example.

1. Ōtī|ūm dī | vōs rōgāt | in pā|tēnti
 2. Prēnsūs | Aēgāē|ō sīmūl | ātrā | nūbes
 3. Cōndī|dit lū|nām nēquē | cērtā | fūlgent
 4. Sīdērā | nautis.

D. The Alcaic Stanza:

This Stanza contains four lines: of which the two first are similar

Scheme.

1,	$\bar{\cup} -$	$\cup -$	$-$	$- \cup \cup$	$- \cup \cup$
2.	$\bar{\cup} -$	$\cup -$	$-$	$- \cup \cup$	$- \cup \cup$
3.	$\bar{\cup} -$	$\cup -$	$- -$	$\cup -$	$-$
4,	$- \cup \cup$	$- \cup \cup$	$- \cup$	$- \cup$	

Example.

Ēheū | fūgā|cēs | Pōstūmē | Pōstūme

Lābūn|tūr ān|nī | nēc pīē|tās mōram

Rūgīs | ēt īn|stāntī | sēnēc|tae

Affērēt | īndōmī | tāēquē | mōrti.

Models of the Sapphic and Alcaic Stanzas, with other Lyric Metres are found in the Odes of Horace. Rules for their elegant construction are given in the Grammar.



APPENDIX II.

MOOD AND COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

I. THE TWO PRIMARY MOODS.

1. The Latin Verb, like the Greek, has Moods (modes of expression) containing Tenses, which mark time, with Numbers and Persons, which determine agents.

The primary Moods are two; a Fact-mood (called *Indicative*), which states and questions: and a Will-mood (called from one of its uses *imperative*), which bids or entreats.

The Fact-mood has Present, Past and Future Tenses, each having two Numbers (Singular and Plural) with three Persons in each.

The Will-mood, having no Past Tenses and no First Persons, is fragmentary.

The old verb *eo*, *ire*, *to go* (pp. 64, 65), has in the Indicative six Tenses, with their full complements: *eo* &c., *ibo* &c., *ibam* &c., *ivi* &c., *ivero* &c., *iveram* &c.: in the Imperative two forms (called there a Present Tense) of the second Persons, *i*, *ite*; and forms (called, as by Madvig, a Future) of the Second and Third Persons, *ito*, *itoto*, *eunto*. These old *-to* forms are but sparingly used in classical prose, though not unusual in poetry.

2. The Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

The Present indicates, (1) what *is* at the time; *esurio*: *frater villam venditat*: (2) what *is* at the same time with something else; *dum spiro*, *spero*: *dum mula ligatur*, *tota abit hora*; hence the idiom of '*dum*,' which is used with a present, even in past time; *dum obsequor* *adulescentibus*, *me senem esse sum oblitus*: (3) what *is* habitually or always; *Bacchus amat colles*: *probitas laudatur et alget*: (4) what an author, living in his works, says or does; *Livius scribit*: *Tacitus ait*: *Cicero verbis abundat*.

Obs. 1. The Present with *jamdiu*, *jampridem*, *jamdudum*, states what *has been and still is*; *jampridem cupio*, *I have been long desiring*; *jamdudum video*, *I see it this long time*.

Obs. 2. The Historic Present (so called) is used by historians and poets to paint to the mind's eye past scenes; *Roma crescit* *Albae ruinis*, *uplicatur* *civium numerus*, *Caelius additur urbi mons* &c. L. (See Hist. Infinitive, p. 140.) It is often used along with the Perfect. See Verg. *Aen.* v. 243 and often.

The Perfect indicates (1) as simple aorist, what *was* in time past; *veni, vidi, vici*: hence (2) what *has ceased to exist*; *fuimus* Troes, *fuit* Ilium: (3) what *has been* up to the present moment (past in present); *vixi* et quem dederat cursum fortuna *peregi*: *dixi* (at the close of a speech): hence (4) what *is accomplished* or *suddenly done*; *perii*: *vicimus*: *fugero* *ferae*: (5) what *has always happened* under the circumstances, what *is usual*; *amisso rege rupere fidem constructaque mella diripere*, V.

The Imperfect indicates (1) what *was going on* in time past; see Cic. Off. iii. 27, *neque vero tum ignorabat* &c. (2) what *was usual* in time past; *dicebat* melius quam scripsit Hortensius, C.

The Pluperfect indicates what *was past* in time past; *inruerant* Danaï, et tectum omne tenebant, V.

The Simple Future indicates what *will be* in time to come; *ibitus* Italiam. It is often used as a polite Imperative; *facies* ut sciam, C.: *nec totā claudes faenilia brumā*, V.

The Future Perfect indicates what *will be completed* in time to come; *qui Antonium oppresserit*, is *bellum confecerit*, C.; and often stands in connection with simple Future; *ut sementem feceris*, ita *metes*, C.; *Turno tempus erit cum optaverit* intactum Pallarta, V.; or for simple Future; *si pergis*, *abiero*, Ter.

Obs. The Futuro Conjugation -urus sum &c. (§ 64) expresses (1) 'being about to,' 'on the point of,' (2) 'being likely to' or 'sure to,' (3) 'being destined to.' On the Gerundive Conjugation, see § 144.

Note 1. A Roman, writing a letter, arranged the Tenses with reference to the time when it would be received; *res, cum hæc scribebam, erat in extremum adducta discrimen, at the time I write, the affair is brought to a crisis*, C.

Note 2. Latin writers in prose and poetry have a subtle construction, by which verbs signifying *power, duty, fitness* (*possum, debeo, decet, licet, oportet* &c.) and phrases of similar force with the verb 'sum' (*aequum, melius, optimum, par*, &c., including the Participles in -dus, -rus), use their past tenses in the Indicative, where the Conjunctive might be otherwise expected: thus Virgil has *poteras* (Ecl. i. 80), *potui* (Aen. iv. 19), *decuit* (xi. 117), et *vellem* et *fuerat melius* (xi. 303): and Cicero, *non Asiae nomen obiciendum Murenæ fuit* (Mur. 5).

3. The Forms of the Imperative Mood.

The Imperative is freely used to command or entreat in its (so called) Prose forms: *i, sequere* Italiam: *fuge*, nate: *pergite*, adulescentes: *intuemini* res nostras: *ite*, capollæ.

Obs. 1. Certain Imperatives, idiomatically joined with forms of other verbs, give to these, by periphrasis, an imperative sense. Such are, *fac*, *cura*, and others; (for prohibition) *cave*, *noli*, and in poetry, *fuge*, *mitte*, *parce*, and others; *cura ut quam primum venias*; *fac magnum animum habeas*: *armis concur-*



rant arma cavete: nolite id velle quod fieri non potest: fuge suspicari: parcite, oves, nimium procedere, V.

Obs. 2. Direct prohibition by 'ne' and Imperative is frequent in poetry; *ne quaere doceri; equo ne credite, V.*; but in prose rare, 'ne' with Perfect Conjunctive being preferred (which poets may also use); *hoc ne feceris: misericordia commotus ne sis: ne respexeris; tu ne quaesieris &c.* See § 147.

Obs. 3. The -to-tor forms are ranked in § 28 &c. as Future: but many call them a second and stronger Imperative, drawn from old legislative formularies. In prose they occur chiefly in solemn documents, as treaties, proclamations &c. Cicero uses them either in speeches, when he wishes to be impressive, or in the familiarity of private letters: poets more freely; *esto: sunt: ipse venito: timor omnis abesto: contemplator.* See Liv. xxiii. 11; xxxviii. 38.

II. THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Besides the Moods cited, the Latin Verb has a Thought-mood, properly termed *Conjunctive*, seeing that its use is to *join with* both the other Moods, and assist their power of expressing speech. It joins with the Indicative *so as to state and question in a tone either contingent on a condition, or modified by mental reserve in the nature of a condition.* It joins with the Imperative, *so as to supply its deficient forms, and also to express the various shades of will-speech in modified tone.* The Conjunctive Mood has four Tenses, called Present, Perfect, Imperfect, and Pluperfect, the powers and uses of which are best learnt from reading and practice. Though the Futures are wanting, all the Tenses are capable of referring to Future time, when required.

1. Pure Conjunctive of contingent or modified Statement (negation takes 'non,' or 'haud').
- A. When a condition is *formally* expressed:
eam si moneas (monueris); irem (issem) si moneres (monuisses): non eam nisi tu moneas (monueris): non irem (issem) nisi tu moneres (monuisses): tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias: improbe feceris, nisi monueris: si luxuriæ temperaret, avaritiam non timeres (timuisses): si redisset filius, pater ei veniam daret (dedisset), Ter.
- B. When a condition is *informally* expressed:
eam (irem, issem) te monente (a te monitus): non eam (irem, issem) te invito (prohibitus a te): optanti divum promittere nemo aude- ret, V.: non illi quisquam se impune tulisset obvis armato, V. Hadria divisus objecto remittas quaerere, Hor.
- C. When a condition is *implied*:
migrantes cernas: Marte videres fervere Leucaten: (i. e. if you were present): pelago credas innare revulsas Cycladas; crederes victos (i. e. if you saw them), Liv.: nec quisquam putet &c., V.
- D. When the tone is modified to avoid positiveness or bluntness:
dubitem haud equidem: perfectum officium rectum, opinor, vocemus,
C. *Velim, nolim, vellem nollem, mallem* may be often so explained.

Forsitan or *fortasse* are often joined with the verb; *forsitan quæratis*: vix verisimile *fortasse videatur*, C. The Perfect Conj. is especially used in modified tone; *dixerim*, *I venture to say*: *crediderim*, *I am inclined to believe*: *nonte transierim*: non ausim: *forsitan quispiam dixerit*, C. (This and the next use of the Pure Conjunctive are often called Potential.)

2. E. Pure Conjunctive of the modified Question. (Negation with 'non.')

A direct question, whether of doubt or of feeling, implies more of mental dubitation when used in the Conjunctive. As in the Indicative, it may be single or disjunctive: *faveas tu hosti? tibi ego irascerer? quis Trojae nesciat urbem? quid facerem? quo fugerem? quid dem, quid non dem? quid faciam? roger anne rogem? eloquar an sileam? cur non confiteamur quod necesse est? iremusne annon? quaro non iremus?*

3. Pure Conjunctive of modified Will-speech (Negation generally by 'ne').
F. Concessive use: allowing, granting &c.

Laurent peccata neque illos juveris auxilio, V.: per me ista pedibus trahantur, C.: tenebras et inertia furta *ne timeant*, V.: *ne sit* summum malum dolor, malum certe est, C.: *fuert* malus civis, C.: verum anceps pugnac fuerat fortuna; *fuisse*; quid metui moritura? V.: nemo is, inquires, umquam fuit; *ne fuert*, C.

- G. Optative and Precative uses: wishing, praying &c.

[utinam, ut, o si, occur with Optative: the Precative is chiefly used in addressing superiors or sacred persons, as a deity, a prince &c.]

(1) *Di vertant bene*, Ter.: *valeant* cives mei, *sint* incolumes, *sint* florentes, *sint* beati, C.: *percam* nisi vera loquor: *ne sim* salvus, si aliter loquor ac sentio, C.: ita me *di ament*: sollicitat, ita vivam, me tua valetudo, C.: *fecissentque* utinam: o mihi praeteritos referat si Iuppiter annos, V.: utinam nimium *ne sit* mihi fertilis illa, V. See Verg. Ecl. iv. 30, 31; x. 48, 49.

(2) *sis* bonus o felixque tuis: *adsis* o placidusque juves et sidera caelo dextra feras, V.: *doceas* iter et sacra ostia pandas, V.: si certum est facere, *facias*, verum *ne* post culpam *conferas* in me, Ter.: *adsit* lactitiae Bacchus dator, V.

- II. Hortative and Jussive uses: exhorting, commanding &c.

[The principal Hortative use is that which appears in the First Person Plural; the Jussive uses of the Third Persons contain a command more or less stringent. Thus 'naviget' (Aen. iv. 287) is a strong mandate: the instructions in the Georgics given in the Third Persons Conjunctive are precepts rightly called jussive: see G. iii. 300, 329.]

(1) *Eamus omnes: moriamur et in media arma ruamus*, V.: *aegritudinem depellamus: imitemur* nostros Brutos, Camillos, Decios; *amemus* patriam, *pareamus* senatui, *consulamur* bonis, C.: si cui virtus, *adsit* et evinctis attollat brachia palmis, V.

(2) *Esferant* quæ secum huc attulerunt, Ter.: *vineat* utilitas reipublicæ: *sit* sermo lenis, *insit* in co lepos, C.: vilicus *ne sit* ambulator, sobrius *sit* semper, ad cenam *ne quo eat*, familiam *exerceat*, *ne plus censeat* sapere se quam dominum, parasitum *ne quem habeat*, Cato.

Obs. 1. Although numerous instances of the Second Person are ascribed to the Precative use, there are some which more properly belong to the Jussive; postremus *loquaris*, primus *taceas*: *invenias* argentum &c.

Obs. 2. The most remarkable examples are those which convey this use of the Will-speech Conjunctive into past time by the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses: praediceas, *you should have told me beforehand*: rem tuam curares, *you should have been minding your own business*: dictis, Albane, maneres, *you should have remained true to your word*, O Alban, V.: restitisses, mortem oppetisses, C.: ne poposcisses, *you ought not to have demanded*, C. This usage is not confined to the Second Person, but extends also to the rest: animam ipse *dedissem*, atque haec pompa domum me, non Pallanta, *referret*, V. Aen. xi. 162; see iv. 678; x. 854.

Obs. 3. In treating of the Imperative, it has been said that direct prohibition (when not periphrastic with 'eave, noli &c.') is in good Latin prose expressed by 'ne' with Perf. Conj.: quod dubitas ne feceris: ne passus sis &c. 'Ne' with Pres. Conj. has been often improperly taken as prohibitive, where the meaning *lest* is that which truly belongs to the particle, as in Hor. ne forte credas interitura &c. and often.

Note. When the Conjunctive is subordinate in construction we call it the *Subjunctive*: vellem *adfuisses*: cura ut *valeas*. As such, its English rendering does not differ from that of the Indicative, except in an adverbial final clause: see p. 66.*

— III. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

1. Oratio Recta means any statement, command, or question directly put.

Oratio Obliqua means any statement, command, or question indirectly put, depending on some verb in Oratio Recta.

Valeo, An valet? Vale, are Oratio Recta: 'Scin' me valere? Nescio an valeat, Cura ut valeas, contain Oratio Obliqua; *me valere* depending on the Oratio Recta *scin'*; *an valeat* on *nescio*; *ut valeas* on *cura*.

* The following lines on Latin Mood may be a help to some young learners:—

1. The *Fact-mood* is employed to mean
IS, WAS, HAD, SHALL-BE, SHALL-HAVE-BEEN :
2. The *Thought-mood* aids it, when we mean
MAY-, MIGHT-, or WOULD-BE, WOULD-HAVE-BEEN :
3. The *Will-mood* aids, DO-THOU, DO-YE
(Old -to- forms add THEY-MUST and HE) ;
But *Thought-mood* forms in aid supply
LET-HIM, -THEM, -US, PRAY-DO, MAY-L

2. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected together; of which one is the Principal, the others, which we call *Clauses*, either (A) Coordinate, or (B) Subordinate.

A. A *Coordinate Clause* is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Clauses are introduced by such particles as *et, que, nec; aut, vel; sed, autem; nam, enim; igitur, itaque; deinde, denique; &c.*: *Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat, C.*

B. A *Subordinate Clause* is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence.

Subordinate Clauses are of three kinds:—

(1) Substantival: (2) Adverbial: (3) Adjectival.

(1) A *Substantival Clause* is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Clauses belong to *Oratio Obliqua*, and are of three kinds: (a) Oblique Enuntiation: (b) Oblique Petition: (c) Oblique Interrogation.

(a) The Oblique (or Indirect) Enuntiation is formed generally by the *Infinitive Clause* (Accusative with Infinitive), dependent on verbs '*sentiendi aut declarandi*,' or by '*ut*' with Subjunctive, or '*quod*' with Indicative or Subjunctive.

* *Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest*, is a Direct Enuntiation: *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enuntiation, *Verum est*, and the Oblique Enuntiation, '*amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*,' which is Substantival, being the Subject of the Verb '*est*,' and having '*verum*' for its Complement.

Invidia gloriæ comes est, is a Direct Enuntiation; *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, '*ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*,' in Apposition to '*hoc*,' the Subject of '*est*,' of which '*commune vitium*' is the Complement.

Calet ignis, is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus calere ignem* a Compound Sentence, having the Direct Enuntiation '*sentimus*,' and the Oblique, '*calere ignem*,' which is the Object of '*sentimus*.'

(b) The Oblique Petition is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with or without the Conjunction '*ut*' or '*ne*' (or by the Infinitive), dependent on Verbs of *desire, request, command, endeavour &c.* *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneas in sententiâ*, *Oro maneas in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*.

(c) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, with Subjunctive Mood.

Quis est? is a Direct Interrogation: *Nescio quis sit, incertum est quis sit*, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, '*quis sit*,' which is the Object of '*nescio*,' and the Subject of '*est*.'

(2) An *Adverbial Clause* is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how, why, when &c.*

Adverbial Clauses are formed by Conjunctions, and are: (a) Consecutive (*so that*); (b) Final (*in order that*); (c) Causal (*because, since*); (d) Temporal (*when, while, until &c.*); (e) Conditional (*if, unless*); (f) Concessive (*although, whereas*); (g) Comparative (*as if, as though &c.*).

- (3) An *Adjectival* or *Relative Clause* is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective. It is formed by the Relative Pronoun 'qui,' or by a Relative Particle.

The Relative Pronoun *qui quæ quod* (with its Particles) has great influence in Latin Construction. It is of all persons, and may be used compendiously as a substitute for the union of a Conjunction with a Personal Pronoun. Hence it forms Coordinate Clauses when used for *et ego, et tu, et is &c.*; for *ego autem, tu autem, is autem &c.*; for *ego igitur, tu igitur, is igitur &c.*; for *ego enim, tu enim, is enim &c.* And it forms Subordinate Clauses when used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is &c.*; for *quia ego, quia tu, quia is &c.*; for *si ego, si tu, si is &c.*; for *etsi ego, etsi tu, etsi is &c.*

2. On the Mood of Finite Verbs subordinate to *Oratio Obliqua*.

- a. Subordinate Clauses may have others subordinate to them, in relation to which they are therefore primary Clauses. From what has been said of Substantival Clauses, it appears that such primary clauses of *Oratio Obliqua* are, mostly, either Infinitive or Subjunctive. Its subordinate Clauses, when finite, generally take the Subjunctive, forming what is called Suboblique construction, as may be seen in the subjoined example:—

Oratio Recta.—*Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinionibus, non scientiâ continetur: nam et apud eos dicimus, qui nesciunt, et ea dicimus, quæ nescimus ipsi.*—Cic.

Oratio Obliqua.—(*Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:*) *Artem earum rerum esse quæ sciuntur: oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientiâ, contineri: quia et apud eos dicat, qui nesciant, et ipse dicat, quod nesciat.*—QUINT.

- β. *Oratio Recta* may be 'virtually oblique' (*obliquæ potestatis*), when the leading predication not merely states a fact, but also implies therein a thought or opinion: and so the clause depending on it becomes 'virtually suboblique.' *Themistocles noctu ambulabat, quod somnum capere non posset*, implies that *Themistocles* alleged inability to sleep as the reason why he walked by night. By writing '*posset*,' *Cicero* would have made the statement of cause his own: '*Posset*' is therefore 'virtually suboblique.'

- γ. A finite Verb subordinate to a Conjunctive Verb usually becomes Subjunctive: *miraretur qui cerneret*, Liv.

Obs. 1. It may happen that a clause, which seems subordinate to *Oratio Obliqua*, is not so really, but is either a fact or a mere epithet; in such circumstances it need not take the Subjunctive

Mood; Caesari exploratores missi referunt, apud Suevos silvam esse infinita magnitudine, quae *appellatur* Baecenis, Caes. B. G. vi. 40. Placet Stoicis eos anhelitus terrae, qui frigidi *sunt*, quum fluere coeperint, ventos esse, C. Div. ii. 19.*

Obs. 2. On the exceptional idiom of dum, see § 152 (2).

EXCURSUS I. On some Terms in Latin Compound Construction.

Grammar, like other sciences, has its technical terms, most of which are of long date, and so fixed by use, that a writer cannot well displace them, inadequate as some may be. But in those departments of higher grammar, which within this century have been subjected to a more searching analysis than previously, agreement between grammarians has not yet been achieved as to the best terms for use,† and the best arrangement of matter.

The terms used in the Latin Primer are, for the most part, enumerated and explained in its glossary. With respect to some of them, a few words may be proper here, for the convenience of teachers rather than for the direct teaching of learners.

1. The term *Conjunctive Mood*, with its two-fold use as *Pure* and as *Subjunctive*.

On few points are grammarians so largely agreed as in using the term *Conjunctive* for the third Latin mood. After consulting from 30 to 40 Latin Grammars published in Germany, none has been found which does not employ this term to describe the Mood in question. In England and France we meet with a few dissidents. Key used the general term *Subjunctive* on the strength of a theory peculiar to himself, that the third Mood always depends on some principal verb, implied where not expressed. Thus he explained *Quid faciam* as representing *Quid vis faciam*? If this theory be not accepted (and we know not where to find its defenders), 'Subjunctive' falls to the ground, as a term manifestly unfit for the Mood in *principal construction*.‡ But, while this appropriate term, *Conjunctive Mood*, has been adopted by the universal consent of German Grammarians, as also by the authority of the experienced teachers who compiled the Primer, and of those in this country who have received it, unhappily German writers refrain from

* The general principle of Mood in subordination to Oblique Oration, actual and virtual, may be thus stated:—The *Conjunctive* is the Mood of thought or conception: Oblique Oration *expresses* a conception: Virtual Oration Obliqua *implies* a conception: the *Subjunctive Mood* (in a Finite Verb subordinate to either) means that the action or state of such Verb forms part of the conception: while Verbs not really included in that conception, though by their position seeming to be so, need not (*Obs. 1.*) be *Subjunctive*.

† While familiar English words should always be at hand to explain technical terms (as in 1.), it seems that for the laws of Grammar (as of Chemistry, Botany, and other Sciences), the technical terms themselves should be used. They serve the memory better, and are common to all nationalities.

‡ German grammarians call the Greek mood also *Conjunctive*. But, supposing it were called *Subjunctive*, this would not justify the exclusive use of the same term in Latin. The Greek *Conjunctive* is generally dependent, never independently predicative, except when asking a question. Indeed, the presence of two differently formed Thought-moods and of modal particles in Greek, widely severs the analogy of the sister languages in this part of Grammar.

using the term *Subjunctive* to represent the dependent *Conjunctive*, contenting themselves with the one term for both uses. Many indeed, as Krüger, wisely draw a sharp line of distinction between the independent (*unabhängig*) *Conjunctive* in a principal sentence (*Hauptsatz*) and the dependent (*abhängig*) in a subordinate sentence (*Nebensatz*, which we, for convenience, render *Clause*); and give names (as in 11.) to the various shades of the independent use; but they employ no general term to distinguish the dependent or subordinate use. This is one of the reasons why their teaching on compound construction is vague and unsettled. Holtze says justly (*Syntaxis Priscorum Scriptorum Latinorum*, 11. p. 136), 'discernendus autem est conjunctivus *absolutus*, qui non pendet aliunde, ab eo conjunctivo, qui aliunde aptus est. Conjunctivi absoluti tria genera distingui possunt, conj. *conditionalis*, *potentialis*, *imperatorius* &c.' His *absolute* is our *pure* *Conjunctive*; and his 'genera' are comprised in the divisions given in 11. But when in p. 147 he writes: 'alterum genus conjunctivi id est, quum aliunde aptus est,' his teaching would have been much improved if here too he had given his 'genus' a title by adding, 'quod subjunctivi nomine discernimus.' Holtze's '*Conjunctivus conditionalis*' corresponds to paragraphs A, B, C (in 11.); his '*potentialis*' to D, E; his '*imperatorius*' to F, G, H.

2. *Enuntiatio: Interrogatio: Petitio.*

These terms for the three forms of a Latin sentence are technical for the Engl. *statement*, *question*, *will-speech*; Germ. *Aussage*, *Frage*, *Heischesatz*. The first two need no defence, being the only Latin words for those meanings; but there are competing terms for the description of the *Conjunctive Will-speech*. Holtze gives '*imperatorius*;' Madvig (§ 346) '*optative*;' some English writers say '*the jussive*.' But '*optative*' is not well fitted to include commands or concessions, nor '*jussive*' to include anything but commands and exhortations. Among adjectives, the most appropriate would perhaps be '*voluntative*;' but, as a substantive, the word here given (*Petitio*) renders with sufficient exactness the often used German *Heischesatz*, and fairly combines the shades of will belonging to the use of the *Conjunctive* for the *Imperative*.

The accepted use in grammar of the terms *Oratio Recta*, *Oratio Obliqua*, carries with it the use of the terms *Enuntiatio Obliqua* (*indirect statement*), *Interrogatio Obliqua* (*indirect question*), *Petitio Obliqua* (*indirect will-speech*), as appropriately technical: and this implies the important truth, too often forgotten in grammatical teaching, that *Oblique* *Oration* comprises all these three forms of the dependent sentence, and not *statement* only. Hence it arises that in the *Oblique Narration*, especially of historians, but found in other writers also, these three forms of indirect speech are so frequently combined under the government of one principal verb '*declarandi*,' '*imperandi*,' or '*rogandi*.'

2. *Substantival, Adverbial, Adjectival Clauses.*

In Grammar it is of the first importance to note any difference which appears in likeness, and any likeness which occurs in difference.



Hence it is wrong to withhold the striking facts represented by the three terms now cited, and explained in chapter III. If a learner were asked to name the grammatical subject (nominative) of the verb in each of the three sentences—*Constat hostes abituros esse*—*Sequitur ut hostes abituri sint*—*Gratum est quod hostes abituri sunt*—he would have to answer—*Hostes abituros esse* is the subject of '*constat*'—*ut hostes abituri sint* of '*sequitur*'—*quod hostes abituri sunt* of '*est*;' thus acknowledging that each of the three subject clauses is in the nature of a substantive. Without pursuing exemplification to object clauses, the above examples are sufficient to indicate that the substantival *ut*-clause and *quod*-clause (though partaking, the one of a consecutive, the other of a causal nature) ought nevertheless to be classed distinctly from the adverbial consecutive and causal clauses, such as appear in the following sentences—*Inopia frumenti tanta est ut hostes abituri sint*—*Cives portas floribus coronant, quod hostes abituri sunt*. See also the construction of two clauses with '*tantum abest*' (Consecutive Clauses).

The distinction of Substantival, Adverbial, and Adjectival Clauses is practically recognised by many German scholars, as Krüger, Kühner, Feldbausch, Grieben, Dräger, and others.

4. Suboblique Construction. Virtual Oratio Obliqua.

Suboblique means 'subordinate to Oratio Obliqua' expressed in a single word: this is its value and its *raison d'être*. As to the other term—in all those constructions of the Subjunctive after a Finite Verb, of which may be taken as a type, *Laudat Africanum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinent*—it seems manifest that the Mood depends on an implied Oratio Obliqua (in that place, '*se laudaro ait*'), and that the term 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua' expresses better and more concisely than any other the principle of the construction.

Note. The propriety of referring this construction to the doctrine of Oratio Obliqua, of making its mood a corollary to the principle of mood in subordination to Oratio Obliqua, and therefore calling it 'Virtually Suboblique,' may be shown by comparison of a few examples.

- (1) *Reperio quattuor causas, cur senectus misera videatur: unam, quod avocet a robis gerendis; alteram, quod corpus faciat infirmius; tertiam, quod privet omnibus fere voluptatibus; quartam, quod haud procul absit a morte.*—Cic. Cato M. 5.

Why are '*avocet*, '*faciat*, '*privet*, '*absit*,' subjunctive? Evidently (as appears from '*videatur*') because '*reperio quattuor causas*' = '*reperio quattuor causas adlatas*;' i.e. because it contains a 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua,' which here cannot be mistaken.

- (2) *Tum liquidas corvi presso ter gutture voces
Aut quater ingeminant &c.
Haud equidem credo, quia sit divinitus illis
Ingenium &c.*—Verg. G. 1. 410 &c.

Why is '*sit*' subjunctive? Evidently because with '*credo*' must be supplied '*corvos ingeminare*' &c.; i.e. on account of a 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua,' which here again is obvious.

- (3) Et quereris quod non, Cinna, bibamus idem.—Mart. xi. 37.

Why is *bibamus* subjunctive? Evidently because one who complains *says*, that he does complain: 'quereris' = 'ais te queri.' Again the contained Oratio Obliqua is obvious.

- (4) Let a different instance be taken.

Mercatique solum, facti de nomine Byrsam,
Taurino quantum possent circumdare tergo.—V. Aen. i. 367.

Why does the subjunctive *possent* stand here, when *poterant* could have been written grammatically? Because the poet refers the covenant to the mind and act of the purchasers contained in *mercati*. They purchased ground, 'pacti tantum fore,' stipulating that it should be so much as (*quantum* &c.) they could surround by a bull's hide. Here, and in many similar places, it is just to say that Oratio Obliqua (that is, an indirect expression of thought) is implied, and that its tenour can be certainly stated; not in the precise words, as in the former passages, but in such as convey the sense.

EXCURSUS II. The following remarks are subjoined as the result of long Latin studies and teaching experience.

1. Arrangement of topics in their just sequence, and a wise choice of terms, are points of signal importance in grammar.

Obs. It is often more really pedantic to avoid technical terms than to use them. Thus it is mere mischievous pedantry to substitute 'indirect speech' for the well-known term Oratio Obliqua.

2. Simple and compound construction should be kept apart in a Latin Grammar; but the use of Accusative Subject with Infinitive should be shortly noticed in the former division, while its full development is kept for the latter, in which it claims the first place as 'the Infinitive Clause.' See §§ 93, 94, 140: and above in III.
3. The doctrine of the Verb Infinitive, and of Moods and Tenses, should be taught, as belonging to the Simple Sentence, before teaching the doctrine of Compound Construction, and Mood therein.

Obs. This principle has been ignored by many grammarians, especially by Madvig, to the great detriment of their usefulness as teachers of grammar.

4. The principles set forth in this Appendix, and defended in the first Excursus, have been practically tested during 35 years; and no attempt has ever been made to prove them unsound. As they belong to an abstruse subject, they cannot be mastered without some expense of time and thought. But this will deter no student who desires to know well what he professes to know at all. The styles of the greatest Latin authors require a knowledge of these principles for their just appreciation.

IV. OUTLINE OF COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

(A.) SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

I. ENUNTIATIO OBLIQUA (indirect Statement).

1. Infinitive Clause (Infin. with Accus. Subject):

(1) as Subject, with the copula 'est,' and with Verbs Impersonal or Passive (fas est, fama est, verum est, necesse est &c., constat, placet, nuntiatur &c.)

(2) as Object, with 'Verba sentiendi et declarandi' (audio, video, credo &c.; aio, dico, nego &c.);

(3) in Apposition to Nouns and Pronouns;

(1) *Facinus est civem vinciri.*—Certum est *nivem frigere.*—*Nuntiatum est Scipionem adesse.*—Constat *leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.*

(2) *Audivimus Pompeios desedisse.*—*Aiunt consulem reditum esse.*—*Spero (polliceor) me tibi causam probaturum.*

(3) *Illud moleste fero, me nihil habere tuarum litterarum.*

(a) *Tene hoc, Atti, dicere?*—*Me non cum bonis esse?*

2. Ut-clause with Subjunctive (for Infin. Clause), chiefly as Subject.

Reliquum est (restat) ut egomet mihi consulam.—*Mos erat ut, pace facta, Jani templum clauderetur.*—*Extremum illud est, ut te obsecrem.*

(a) *Te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut umquam te corrigas?*

3. Quod-clause (for Infin. Clause) with Indicative chiefly.

Gratum est quod patriae civem dedisti.—*Vitium est quod ad exempla vivimus.*—*Mitto quod invidiam subieris.*

II. PETITIO OBLIQUA (indirect Will-speech).

1. Verbs of *permitting, wishing, praying, exhorting, commanding*, take Subjunctive with *ut, ne*, or omitting Conjunction.

(1) As Subject. *Permissum est consuli ut scriberet duas legiones.*—*Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.*—*Nuntiatum est Antonio ne Brutum obsideret; a Mutina discederet.*

(2) As Object. *Sine te exorem.*—*Sivi ut animum expleret suum.*—*Vellem ipse pater spectator adesset.*—*Vin' experiamur?*—*Precor ut haec castra ne pollui sinatis.*—*Immortalia ne speres monet annus.*—*Hortantur socii Cretam proavosque petamus.*—*Jubeto ut certet Amyntas.*—*Jube maneat.*

(3) In Apposition. *Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.*—*Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum.*

2. Verbs of *caring, striving, doing, effecting* take the same constructions, forming elegant periphrases.

- (1) Videndum est *ut* re nostra bene *utamur*.—Mea magna interest te *ut* *vidam*.—Curandum est *ut* *nequid* *desit*.—Potin' *ut* mihi molestus *ne sis*.—Fieri non potest, *ut* quis Romae *sit*, quum est Athenis.—Per fetiales fiebat *ut* justum conciperetur bellum. (2) Si fata fuissent *ut* *caderem* merui manu.—Vide *ne* *absit* benignitas.—Cavit *ut* omnia in sua potestate *essent*.—Ego *nequid* nocere *possint* caverō.—Caveto disciplinam temere *contemnas*.—Curata *fac sint* omnia.—Pol me fecisse arbitror *ne* id mihi merito *eveniret*.—Vos effici posse sine Deo negatis, *ut* natura tot mundos *effectura sit*, *efficiat*, *effecerit*.—Potes officere *ut* male *moriar*; *ne moriar* non potes.—Nolo committere *ut* in scribendo negligens fuisset *videar*. (3) Danda est opera, *ut* *effugiamus*.—Id agit vir, *ut* se *conserve*t.

- (a) Predications of *fearing* take *ne*, *ne non*, and *ut* for *ne non*:

—Ea timet *ne* *deseras* se.—Verebimini *ne non* id *facere*m.—Metuo *ut* *erellant*.—Id paves, *ne* *ducas* tu illam, tu autem *ut* *ducas*.

- (β) *Licet*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, omit Conjunction:

Ludas licet.—Mihi patronus *sim* *necesse est*.—*Valeat* possessor *oportet*.

- (γ) Verbs of *wishing* (also *oportet*) may take Perf. Passive Infinitive: *Nollem factum*.—*Mansum* *oportuit*.—*Rempubicam defensam* volo.

~III. INTERROGATIO OBLIQUA (indirect Question) with Subjunctive after oblique Interrogative Pronouns and Particles.

- (1) As Subject. In beneficio videndum est *quando* et *cui* et *quemadmodum* et *quare* *demus*.
 (2) As Object. — *Quid* agas, *ubi* *futurus sis*, *quales* res nostras *reliqueris*, *cum* *ut* *sciamus*.—*Ut* *placeat* juveni *percunctare*, *utque* *cohorti*.—*Nescio an venerit*.—*Nescio an non venerit*.
 (3) In Apposition. *Ipse qui sit*, *utrum sit an non sit*, id quoque *nescit*. (See Verg. Ecl. vi.; G. i. 1 &c. Hor. Epist. 15, 1-25.)

(B) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

I. Consecutive Clauses (*so that*).

Ut (*so that*), *ut non*, *ut nihil*, *ut nullus*, *ut nemo* &c., take Subjunctive.

- (1) After Demonstratives *talīs*, *tantus*, *is*, *ita*, *tam*, *adeo* &c.

Quis tam demens est *ut* sua voluntate *maereat*?—Decori vis ea est *ut* ab honesto *non* *queat* separari.—Titus ita facilis fuit *ut* *nemini* *quicquam* *negaret*.

- (2) Omitting Demonstrative.

Arboribus consita Italia est, *ut* tota pomarium *videatur*.

- (3) After Comparative and *quam*.

Isocrates majore ingenio est *quam* *ut* cum Lysia *comparetur*.

α. *Tantum* *abest* with two Clauses: (1) *subst.*; (2) *adverbial*.

Tantum *abest* *ut* id *velim*, *ut* nihil magis *deprecor*.

II. Final Clauses (*ut*, *that*, *in order that*; *ne*, *lest*, *that not*).

Ut, ne, nequis, nequando &c., take Subjunctive.

Ut scias, latine jam loquar.—*Laterem lavas, ut ita dicam*.—*Legum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus*.—*Scipio rus abiit, ne ad causam dicendam adesset*.—*Ulciscar, ut ne impune in nos intuleris*.

(Particles of other classes often contain an idea of purpose: such are *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, sometimes *si* &c.)

III. Causal Clauses (*because*, *since* &c.)

1. *Quod, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, quatenus, siquidem*, normally take Indic., but Subjunctive after Oratio Obliqua.

Adsunt propterea quoa officium sequuntur; tacent quia periculum metuunt.—*Dicite, quandoquidem in molli concedimus herba*.—*Quoniam jam nox est*, discedite.

2. *Quum* (*since*, implying mental reflexion) with Subjunctive

Quae quum ita sint, quid est quod de Archiae civitate dubitetis, praesertim *quum* in aliis quoque civitatibus fuerit adscriptus?

- (a) For the same reason *non quod* usually requires Subjunctive.

Pugiles ingemiscunt, non quod doleant animove succumbant, sed *quia profundenda voce corpus intenditur*.

(*Postquam, dum, donec, si, siquidem*, may contain causal force.)

IV. Temporal Clauses (*when*, *as soon as*, *as often as* &c.).

1. *Quum, quando, quotiens, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi, postquam*, normally take Indic., but Subj. after Oratio Obliqua.

Tua res agitur, paries quum proximus ardet.—*Ut vidi, ut perii!*—*Miserum est fodere, ubi sitis fauces tenet*.—*Horreo, postquam asperi hanc*.

- a. On *quum* with Subj. in narration, see Rule § 153 (1): *quum adesset, quum venisset* &c.

2. *Dum, donec, quoad* (*whilst, until*), *antequam, priusquam* (*before*), often take Indicative, but, when they contain a sense of purpose, or after Oratio Obliqua, they take Subjunctive.

- (1) *Dum eoquitur, interimpotabimus*.—*Manete dum redeo*.—*Ilud desinam donec perfecero*.—*Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*.—*Donec rediit Marcellus, de comitiis silentium fuit*.—*Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laudo crevit*.—*Antequam opprimit lux, erumpamus*.

- (2) *Expectate dum consul fiat Kaeso*.—*Dies praestituta est quoad referret*.—*Trepidabant, donec timor quietem fecisset*.—*Hannibal omnia erat expertus priusquam excederet pugna*.—*Tragoedi, antequam pronuntient, vocem excitant*.

V. Conditional Clauses (*if, unless, provided that &c.*).

1. *Si, nisi* have three chief forms; with Indicative chiefly* in the first, Conjunctive in the second and third forms.

(1) *Si vis potes.*—*Faciam si potero.*—*Bonus si esse vis, bene erit tibi.*—*Siquid erit, fac sciam.*—*Siquid erat grande vas, adferebant.*—*Peream si falsa loquor.*—*Ne vivam ni vera loquor.*—*Animus rediit si mecum servatur fides.*—*Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcumque infundis, acescit.*—*Hanc redde, nisi si mavis vi eripi.*—*Mirum ni illa salva est et ego perii.*—*Faciet, nisi caveo.*

(2) *Si di curent, bene bonis sit, male malis.*—*Sescenta sunt quas memorem si sit otium.*—*Si monstret, gratiam ineat.*—*Si scieris, improbe feceris, nisi monueris.*—*Non negem, si noverim.*—*Quid si taceas?*—*Redeam? non, si me obsecret.*—*Si a corona relictus sim, non queam dicere.*—*Faciat nisi caveam (caverim).*

(3) *Valerem, si hic maneres.*—*Non possem vivere, nisi in litteris viverem.*—*Si acum, credo, quaereres, acum invenisses, si appareret.*—*Si id scissem, numquam huc tetulissem pedem.*—*Si ante voluisses, esses.*—*Ni nossem causam, crederem vera hunc loqui.*—*Faceret nisi caverem (cavissem).*

- (a) In sentences of form (3), when *nisi* is used, the principal verb is sometimes Indicative, as an idiom or for the sake of emphasis.

Nec veni, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent.—*Me truucus inlapsus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum dextra levasset.*—*Angoribus eram confectus, nisi eis restitissem.*—*Prohibere nou poterat, nisi proelio decertare vellet.*—*La bebar longius, nisi me retinuisses.*

- (β) *Si* is used to imply purpose, wish:

Si fallere possit amorem.—*Si nunc se . . . ramus ostendat.*
Verg.

(Temporal and Conditional Sentences require large exemplification in order to be thoroughly known.)

2. *Dum, modo, dummodo, tantum, tantummodo, modo ut, dum ne, modo ne &c.* (*provided that &c.*) take Subjunctive:

Oderint dum metuant.—*Scies, modo ut tacere possis.*—*Gallia belli patitur injurias, dummodo repellat sorritutem.*—*Sed patiari licet, dum ne contempta relinquant.*—*Velis tantummodo, expugnabis.*

* In these Compound Sentences the Clause containing the condition (*si, nisi*) is called *Protasis*, its answer in the Principal Sentence *Apodosis*. Of their three chief forms, that which has Indicative in the Protasis has been called by some grammarians 'Sumptio Dati,' because it suggests neither probability nor improbability; the second (Conjunctive Pres. or Perf. answered by Conjunctive), 'Sumptio Dandi,' as suggesting a probable or, at least, possible case: the third (Conjunctive Imperf. or Plup., answered by one of the two), Sumptio Ficti, as suggesting a case of a purely imaginary and unreal kind. See MANUAL.

VI. Concessive Clauses (*although, whereas*).(The demonstrative *tamen* often accompanies.)

1. *Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi*, as they contain *si*, mainly follow its rules.
Tamen etsi res bene gesta est, corde suo trepidat.—Memini, tametsi nullus moneas.
2. *Quamquam, utut*, prefer Indicative:
Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa.—*Utut* erga me est meritis, mihi cordi est tamen.
3. *Licet, quum, ut* (meaning *although*), take Subjunctive. Also *quamvis* usually, but not when it contains a matter of fact.
Quod turpe est, *quamvis* occultetur, tamen honestum non fit.—*Ut desint* vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.—Phocion fuit pauper, *quum* divitissimus esse posset.—Polio amat nostram, *quamvis* est rustica, musam.

VII. Comparative Clauses (*as if; as though*).*Tamquam, ceu, velut, quasi, tamquam si, ut si, ac si, quam si* &c., require Subjunctive:

Parvi primo ortu jacent, *tamquam* sine animo sint.—Natura cornua dedit arietum generi, *ceu* caestus daret.—Hujus rem ut tueare, aequae a te peto, *ac si* mea negotia essent.—Sic Plancius quaestor est factus, *quam si* esset summo loco natus.—Stultum est in luctu capillum sibi evellere, *quasi* calvitio maeror levetur.

Note 1. Conjunctions are often suppressed:

Decies centena dedisses huic parco, paucis contento, quinque diebus nil erat in loculis.—Partem opere in tanto, *sineret* dolor, Icare, haberes.—Naturum expellas furca, tamen usque recurret.

Also in Comparative Sentences, when *tamquam, ceu, velut* are used alone, *si* must be understood; and when *si* is used (as in *ac si, quam si* &c.), its true apodosis is suppressed. 'Aequae a te peto *ac si* mea negotia essent' means 'aequae a te peto *ac peterem, si* mea negotia essent'; just as in Virgil (Aen. ii. 522), '*non si* ipse meus nunc adforet Hector' means 'non egeret si' &c.

Note 2. Many of the Particles cited (*nisi, etsi, quamquam, quamvis, tamquam, ceu, velut, quasi*) can be used, like *ut* (*as*), with annexive power, without affecting mood.

Labienus juravit se, *nisi* victorem, in castra non rediturum.—*Etsi* non iniquum, certe tamen triste senatusconsultum factum est.—Haec, mira *quamquam*, credebantur.—Res bello gesserat, *quamvis* reipublicae calamitosas, attamen magnas.—Nostine hominem? *Tamquam* te.—Litteras graecas sic avidè arripui, *quasi* diuturnam sitim explere cupiens.—Demosthenis orationes converti, non *ut* interpretes, sed *ut* orator.



(C) ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

Qui quæ quod, as a mere Relative (when not suboblique), takes Indicative: *bis dat, qui cito dat*. See p. 156.

I. It is largely used as Consecutive, with Subjunctive Verb.

(1) After a Demonstrative *talis, is* &c.

(2) Omitting Demonstrative, after words of various kinds: Comparative and *quam*; *dignus, indignus* &c.; *est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo*, and many more verbs; *aliquis, pauci, multi, solus*, with indefinite sense; *nemo, nullus, nihil* &c., and Interrogatives: in short, wherever it implies *talis ut, of such kind that*.

(1) Non is sum *qui his rebus delecter*.—*Nihil tanti est quo vendamus libertatem*.

(2) *Majora deliquerant quam quibus ignosci posset*.—*Dignus est qui imperet*. *Est qui vinci possit*.—*Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum*.—*Habes qui adsideat, fomenta parat*. *Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet*.—*Solus es, Gai Caesar, in cuius victoria nemo ceciderit nisi armatus*. *Nihil est quod tam deceat quam constantia*.*

a. *Quod sciam, so far as I know: quod meminerim*.

II. *Qui*, with Final Sense, takes Subjunctive:

Litteras misi, quibus et placarem eum et monerem.

a. Thus *quo* for *ut eo*, especially with Comparatives:

Ager novatur, quo meliores fructus edat.

β. Hence, the use of *quominus*. See below.

III. *Qui*, with Causal Sense, like *quum*, takes Subjunctive:

Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.

Multaque se incusat, qui non acceperit ultro

Dardanium Acnean, generumque adsciverit urbi.

a. So *ut qui, quippe qui*. The latter rarely has Indic.

β. Observe *non quod, non quo*: also *non quin* for *non quia non*.

Appellantur insignia, non quod sola ornent sed quod excellant.

The mood of *excellant* arises from Virtual Oratio Obliqua in *appellantur*. See (D). 2; (B). III. a.

IV. *Qui*, with Concessive Sense, like *quum*, takes Subjunctive:

Egomet, qui leviter graecas litteras attigissem, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.

V. Relative Particles, *quo, qua, quomodo, ubi, quare, cur, quatenus, unde*, are used with Mood on the same principles as *qui*:

Perge quo coepisti. *Digna res est ubi nervos intendas*.—*Erat nihil cur properato opus esset*.—*Est quatenus amicitiae dari venia possit*.—*Dum est unde jus civile discatur, adulescentes in disciplinam tradite*.

* *Is qui, est qui, sunt qui*, take Indic., when *qui* is definite, not implying *talis ut*. See Hor. C. l. i. 19.



NOTE. The Conjunctions *quominus*, *quoniam*.

1. *Quominus*, after predications of *hindrance*, takes Subjunctive:

Senectus non impedit *quominus* litteris utamur.—Non recusavit *quominus* poenam subiret. Per Afranium stetit *quominus* dimicaretur.

- a. *Ne* after such Verbs *forbids* or *hinders* the action:

Pontus erat vetitus *ne mergeret* aequore terram.—Sulpicius intercesserat *ne exsules reducerentur*.

2. *Quin* (1), for *qui non*, after Negative and Interrogative words, follows the rules of *qui* consecutive:

Nihil est *quin* male narrando *possit* depravarier.—Nullum intermisi diem *quin* scriberem.—Quis fundum colit *quin* sues habeat?

- (2) For *quæ non*, *ut non*, after a negation or question of doubt, *stoppage*, *cause* &c.:

Non dubito *quin fuerint* ante Homerum poetæ.—Nec requies *quin* mox pomis *exuberet* annus.—Facere non possum *quin* cotidie ad te *mittam*.—Prorsus nihil abest *quin* sim miserimus.—*Quin* ad diem *decedam* nulla causa est.—Quis dubitet *quin* in virtute divitiarum *positæ sint*? Quid est causæ *quin* decemviri coloniam in Janiculum *possint* deducere?

(D) SUBOBLIQUE CONSTRUCTION.

1. If a Finite Verb is really subordinated to Oratio Obliqua by any Conjunction or Relative, it will assume the Subjunctive, as the Mood of Thought.

- (1) Ais, *quoniam sit* natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.—Seito me, *postquam* in urbem *venerim*, rediscere cum libris in gratiam.—Omnes intellegunt, *si* salvi esse *velint*, necessitati esse parendum. Simile veri est, non ex eisdem semper populis exercitus scriptos, *quamquam* eadem semper gens bellum *intulerit*.—Caesar ad me scripsit, gratis sibi esse *quod quieverim*.—Epicurum arbitror omnia tradidisse, *quæ pertinerent* ad bene beateque vivendum.—Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, *cui, quod opus sit, ipsi veniat* in mentem; prope accedere illum, *qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet*.—Ariovistus respondit: *siquid* ipsi a Caesare opus *esset*, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; *siquid* ille a se *vellet*, illum ad se venire oportere.

- (2) Illud omnes pro certo habent, ut, *quemadmodum* ratione recte fiat, sic ratione peccetur.—Caesar hortatus est milites, ne ea, *quæ acciderent*, graviter ferrent.

- (3) Solon, quum interrogaretur, cur nullum supplicium constitueret in eum *qui parentem necasset*, respondit, se id neminem facturum putasse.

- (α) If the Finite Clause does not really form a part of the Oratio Obliqua, but is interposed or added by a writer or speaker

for explanation or as a mere epithet, it need not assume the Subjunctive; for it suggests fact, not thought.

Atticum gloriantem audiui, se numquam cum sorore fuisse in similitate, *quam* propo aequalem *habebat*.—Xerxem litteris certior feci, id agi ut pons, *quem* in Hellesponto *fecerat*, dissolveretur.—Eloquendi vis efficit ut ea, *quae* *ignoramus*, discere, et ea, *quae* *scimus*, alios docere possimus.

(B) On the idiom of *dum* see § 153 (2).

Quanto laudabilius periturum *Pisonem*, *dum* rempublicam amplectitur, *dum* auxilia libertati *invocat*!

2. When a Principal Verb, by its own meaning (as *accusare*, *laudare*, *queri*, *vituperare*), or by its context, *implies a statement or thought* on the part of its Subject (that is, implies Oratio Obliqua), the Finite Verb subordinated to it by a Conjunction or Relative will be Subjunctive, as Virtually Suboblique.

(1) *Laudat* Africanum Panactius, *quod fuerit* abstineus.—Phalerus Demetrius Periclem vituperat, *quod* tantam pecuniam in praelara illa propylaea *conjecerit*.—Falso queritur de natura sua genus humanum, *quod* imbecilla atque aevi brevis forte potius quam virtute *regatur*.—Socrates accusatus est *quod* *corrumpere*t juventutem.—Sapiens non dubitat, *si* ita melius sit, migrare de vita.—Nemo umquam oratorem, *quod* latine loqueretur, admiratus est.—Recte Socrates oxsecrari eum solebat, *qui* primus utilitatem ab honestate *sejunctisset*.

(2) Darius ejus pontis, *dum* ipse *abesset*, custodes reliquit.—Caesar ab Helvetiis pacem petentibus servos, *qui* ad eos *perfugissent*, poposcit.—Volsci, *quia* nondum ab Aequis *venissent* auxilia, dimicare non ausi.—Alium rogantes regem misere ad Jovem, inutilis *quoniam* *esset* qui fuerat datus.—At enim memoria minuitur. Credo, *nisi* eam *exerceas*.—Cotta libros mihi legavit, *quos* frater suus *reliquisset*.—Prorogatum veteribus imperatoribus est imperium cum exercitibus *quos* *haberent*.—Fit Beroc... *cui* genus et quondam nomen natique *fuissent*, V. Aen. v. 620. Comp. ix. 289, where 'quod nequeam' is subordinate to the Or. Obl. implied in 'testis' (me hanc insalutam linquere).

(a) A Verb which implies Oratio Obliqua, when used in the Third Person, does not necessarily imply it when used in the First. Thus, 'laudo te *quod paruisti*' is strictly right. But a Verb in the First Person may imply Oratio Obliqua, as 'credo' in Ex. 5 of (2), and in Virgil, G. i. 415.

(B) By a Latin idiom, 'Verba sentiendi et declarandi,' when subordinate to the Indicative, often assume the Subjunctive.

Ab Atheniensibus, locum sepulturae intra urbem ut darent, impetrare non potui, *quod* religione se impediri *dicerent*.—Qui e Gallia veniunt, superbiam tuam accusant, *quod* *negant* te percunctantibus respondere.

3. A Finite Verb subordinate to a Subjunctive is usually Subjunctive.

Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, *quae* secum *commentatus* *esset*, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, *quibus cogitavisset*.

4. By the peculiar Ellipsis called Zeugma, one Verb takes various constructions, to all which it is not alike suitable.

Sociis tunc arma capessant
Edico et dira bellum eum gente gerendum.

V. Aen. iii. 234 (sec iv. 288-294).

The three constructions of Oratio Obliqua (statement, will-speech, and question) are thus often blended by historians (especially by Caesar, Livy, Tacitus) when they report speeches in that indirect form, which is called Oblique Narration.

- (1) Thrasybulus, quum exercitus triginta tyrannorum fugeret, magna voce exclamat: *Cur se victorem fugiant?* Civium illam meminerint aciem, non hostium esse: triginta se dominis, non civitati, bellum inferre. Just. v. 10.
- (2) Bomilear Jugurtham monet atque lacrimans obtestatur, *uti aliquando sibi liberisque et genti Numidarum optime merenti provideat; omnibus proeliis sese victos, agrum vastatum, multos mortales captos aut occisos, regni opes comminutas esse, satis saepe jam et virtutem militum et fortunam tentatam: caveat ne illo cunctante Numidae sibi consulant.* Sall. Jug. 62.
- (3) Consules scripta ad Caesarem mandata remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam *reverteretur*, Arimino *excederet*, exercitus *dimitteret*; quae si fecisset, Pompeium in Hispanias *iturum*. Caes. B. C. i. 10.
- (4) Caesar centuriones ~~re~~ementer in eum *usavit*, primum, *quod* aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum *putarent*: *Arivistum, se* consule, cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam *appetisse; cur* hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum *judicaret?* *Sibi* quidem *persuaderi*, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspeeta, *eum* neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiatum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, *quid* tandem *vererentur*, aut *cur* de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia *desperarent?* Caes. B. G. i. 40.
- (a) Historians in Oblique Narration sometimes place an indirect question in the Infinitive Clause; sometimes they use the Infinitive Clause in dependence on a Conjunction.
Plebs fremit: '*Quid se vivere, quid in parte civium censeri, si, quod duorum hominum virtute partum sit, id obtinere universi non possint.*' Liv. vii. 18 (see i. 50).
Tribuni aiebant: *fugero senatum testes, tabulas publicas, census cujusque; quum interim obaeratam plebem objectari aliis atque aliis hostibus.* Liv. vi. 27.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.

I. On the Latin Infinitive (p. 140).

1. As a Verb-noun:

Subject (a) of the Impersonal Verbs oportet &c. (p. 145);

(b) Of *est* with Adjectives and Substantives (meum, tuum, nostrum, impium, miserum, utile, aequum &c.) *est*; (sapientis,

insipientis &c.) est; (animus, consilium, copia, fas, nefas, fatum, mos, operae pretium, potestas, religio, sententia, studium, tempus &c.) est; (cordi, curae, moris &c.) est.

2. Prolatively:

(a) With Participles and Adjectives (chiefly in poetry):

Paratus, poritus, avidus, certus, dignus, felix, nescius, solers &c. &c.

(b) With Passive Verbs of copulativo nature (arguor, colligor, comperior, credor, demonstror, diceor, existimor, feror, fingor, indicor, insimulor, intellegor, invenior, iudicor, jubeor, memoror, narror, negor, nuntior, ostendor, perhibeor, praedicor, probor, prohibeor, putor, reperior, sinor, trador, vetor, and especially videor). See p. 140.

(c) With a large body of extensible Verbs:

(1) Intransitive of *power, skill, will, custom; effort, plan, design; haste, delay; beginning, proceeding, ceasing; fearing; scorning; joy, sorrow* (possum, nequeo, scio, nescio &c.; volo, nolo, studeo, audeo &c.; soleo, adsuesco &c.; cogito, memini, meditor, conor, incumbo, insto, laboro, molior, contendo, tendo; paro, peto, quaero; decerno, statuo &c.; consilium capio, festino &c.; propero &c.; cesso, cunctor, dubito, moror &c.; coepi, incipio &c.; pergo &c.; absisto, desisto, desino, natto &c.; metuo, timeo, vereor, horreo, paveo, trepido &c.; aspernor, dedignor, caveo, fugio, gravor &c.; gaudeo, laetor, doleo &c.

(2) Transitive and trajective Verbs of *allowing, denying, hindering; wishing, praying, advising, teaching, exhorting, commanding, forbidding* &c. which may have an Object noun with an Infinitive (permitto, do, sino, recuso &c.; cupio, opto, oro &c.; hortor &c.; moneo &c.; suadeo, persuadeo &c.; adigo, subigo, impello, ago, eogo, stimulo &c.; jubeo, impero &c.; prohibeo &c.; veto).

II. On Enuntiatio Obliqua (indirect Statement), p. 161.

Indirect Statement by the Infinitive Clause (Accus. with Inf.) may accompany most predications of *perception, feeling, opinion, or assertion*.

1. As Subject, with the Impersonals shown p. 145, b. 2, and some others: with *est* joined to many Adjectives, Substantives, and Adverbs: such as, certum, credibile, decorum, falsum, mirum, miserum, non dubium, perspicuum, probabile, usitatum, verum, veri simile &c. &c.; tama, fas, jus, nuntius, rumor, suspicio, tempus, testis &c. &c.; aegre, palam, satis &c.

2. As Object, with

(1) Accipio, audio, agnosco, animadverto, comperio, intellego, sentio, video &c.; cogito, memini, reordor &c.; arbitror, censeo (*deem*), credo, duco, existimo, iudico, opinor, puto, reor, suspicor

&c.; confido, diffido, dubito &c.; gaudeo, lactor, angor, dolco, aegre (molest) fero &c.; indignor, miror, queror, and others. (On 'spero' see below.)

- (2) Dico, praedico, aio, addo, respondeo, clamo, memoro, nuntio, perhibeo, fero (*report*), narro, prodo, trado, cano &c.; fateor, confiteor, ostendo, gratulor &c.; affirmo, confirmo, arguo, contendo, dissero, doceo (*inform*) &c.; nego, infitior, infitias eo, diffiteor &c.; glorior, mentior, fingo, facio (= fingo), simulo, dissimulo &c.; pono (*propose*), probro, colligo, concludo, efficio (*prove*), teneo (*maintain*), and others.
- (3) Spero, despero &c.; polliceor, promitto, recipio &c.; juro &c.; minor, mitor &c. regularly take Fut. Inf., but are found with Pres. Inf.; spero often with posse.
- (4) The Infin. Clause may stand with many of the Will-verbs, which take other constructions also: permitto, patior, sino &c.; moneo, persuadeo, postulo &c.; cogo, jubeo, impero, mando, praecipio &c.; prohibeo, veto, impedio (rare) &c.
- (a) On the Infin. Clause without preceding verb, used to express indignant surprise:—on the suppression of an indefinite or pronoun subject in the clause:—on Greek idioms occurring in Latin:—on the convenient substitution of Passive for Active Clause:—and on the construction of Copulative Verbs Passive personally with Simple Infin. (p. 140), see MANUAL OF COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION, § 15, 6-10, with the examples.
- (β) On the *Ut*-clause and the *Quod*-clause (for Infin. Clause), see MANUAL, §§ 16, 17.

III. On Petitio Obliqua (indirect Will-speech), p. 162.

The chief Will-speech Verbs are:

- (1) Permitto, concedo, patior, sino, do, recuso &c.; cupio, opto, volo, malo, nolo &c.; oro, rogo, peto, posco, postulo, flagito, precor, quaeso, contendo, obsecro, obtestor, veneror &c.; hortor, moneo, moveo, persuadeo, suadeo, cogo, impello, indaco, auctor sum &c.; censeo, decerno, edico, jubeo, impero, mando, praecipio &c.; sancio &c.; dico, mitto, nuntio, respondeo, scribo &c., implying command; prohibeo, veto, impedio &c.; with some compounds of these, and other forms, lex est, placet, visum est, licet, necesse est, oportet &c.
- (2) Caveo, curo, studeo, video, provideo, id ago, operam do, enitor &c.; facio, efficio, perficio, committo, consequor, adipiscor, assequor, impetro, pervinco &c.; with other forms, sit, fieri potest, potis est &c. All the constructions of Verbs (1) (2) are of Final nature.
- (a) See MANUAL (§§ 18-25) for examples of these Verbs, and of those which express Fear, Caution, Desire: of Impersonal predications, and of elegant periphrases with facio, committo &c.

IV. On Interrogatio Obliqua (indirect Question), p. 162.

Indirect Questions contain a Subjunctive introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun or Particle dependent on various predications.



The pronouns and particles are:

Quis, qualis, quot, quantus, uter, quotus, unde, ubi, quando, cur, quare, quo, qua, quam, quomodo, num, ne, ut, an, utrum, with some others.

The leading predications are those of *stating, hearing, knowing, remembering, forgetting, inquiring, doubting, wondering, caring, considering, determining, concerning*, and the like. Most of the Latin Verbs forming such predications are included in the lists already given; others will be easily recognised in the course of reading, and need not be specified here.

Obs. The Subjunctive in an indirect question is (like the Mood with *ut, so that*) an idiom of classical Latin, differing from Greek and from English usage. Greek has *οἶδα ὃ τι βούλει*, English, *I know what you want*, where Latin says, *scio quid velis*. The oldest Latin writers often used the Indicative in this construction.

(a) The Latin Verbs in these classes ought to be well studied. Most of them take various constructions: on which see MANUAL, § 27.

V. On the Consecution of Tenses.

The Law of the Consecution of Tenses (§ 155), that Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, Historic by Historic, is illustrated by all the foregoing examples, especially by those of *Petitio* and *Interrogatio Obliqua*, Consecutive and Final Clauses. The following scheme shows it simply:

P. Rogo	}	quid agas, egeris, acturus
Oportet me scire		sis.
Rogabo		quid agatur, actum sit, agendum sit.
Oportebit me scire	}	
H. Rogabam		quid ageres, egisses, acturus
Oportebat me scire		esses.
Rogavi	}	quid ageretur, actum esset, agendum esset.
Oportuit me scire		
Rogaveram		
Oportuerat me scire	}	

(a) A Present-Past *rogavi* (*I have inquired*) is strictly a Primary Tense, and should have Primary Consecution: but Cicero generally gives it Historic Consecution.

(β) A Historic Present is often used with Historic Consecution: but not necessarily.

(γ) The Infinitive acquires conditional power by means of the Future Participle:

Scio eum venturum esse si possit,
I know that he will come if he can.
 Sciebam eum venturum esse si posset,
I knew that he would come if he could.
 Sciebam eum venturum fuisse si potuisset,
I knew that he would have come if he could.

This subject, with the use of Reflexive Pronouns in Clauses, is fully treated in the MANUAL, §§ 59 &c.

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.

—♦—

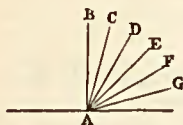
[**N. E.**, Notes on Etymology. **N. S.**, Notes on Syntax. **N. P.**, Notes on Prosody. An Asterisk marks the new terms adopted in this Book.]

A.

- Ablativus* (auferre, to take away), the Ablative Case, so called from one of its uses (Departure). §§ 110-125. See *Case*.
- Absolutus Ablativus* (absolvere, to release), the Ablative Absolute, because it stands released, as it were, from government. § 125
- Accident*, any change happening (accidens) to a word. § 11 (3).
- Accusativus* (accusare, to accuse), the Accusative Case, because the accused is the *Object* of prosecution. Gr. αἰτιατικὴ πτῶσις. § 95.
- Activa vox* (agere, to do), the Active Voice of Verbs, expresses 'doing.'
- Adjectivum*, Adjective (quod adjicitur Substantivo). Gr. ἐπίθετον, epithet. §§ 32, 87, 89.
- Adverbial and Adjectival Clauses*. N. S. Appendix ii. pp. 158, 162, 163.
- Adverbium*, Adverb, 'quia ad Verbum est' Gr. ἐπίρρημα. §§ 9, 37, 82.
- Alphabet*, the Letters of a language, from Alpha, Beta (A, B), the two first letters in Greek, § 1.
- * *Annexive Relation*, that by which one word is annexed to another, so as to take the same construction. § 146.
- Anomala*, Irregular Words, Gr. ἀνώμαλα (ἀ, not; ὅμαλος, even). §§ 25, 78.
- Apodosis* (ἀποδιδόναι, to render back), a Principal Sentence limited by a Clause called Protasis (προτείνειν, to stretch before). N. S. p. 164.
- Appositum* (apponere, to place beside), an Appositive, or Substantive placed beside another in Qualitative relation. §§ 87, 90. See *Attributum*.
- Asyndeton* (ἀ, not; συνδέειν, to bind together), the annexing of words without a conjunction.
- Attractio* (attrahere, to draw to), a Figure of Syntax. § 159 N. S. i. E. 2.
- Attributum* (attribuere, to assign), Attribute; an Adjective assigned to qualify a Substantive. §§ 87, 89. The Qualitative relation of an Attribute or Appositive to the words they qualify may be
- (1) Epithetic: Croesus dives; Croesus rex.
 - (2) Attributively Enthetic (see *Enthesis*): Croesus, regum ditissimus, vincitur; Croesus, rex Lydorum, vincitur.
 - (3) Adverbially Enthetic: Croesus non dives interiit; Croesus non rex interiit.
 - (4) Complemental: Croesus fuit dives; Croesus fit rex. § 87.

C.

Casus (cadere, to fall), Case. Gr. πᾶσις. A. By Case is meant the form given to a Noun or Pronoun in order to show the relation in which it stands to some other word in the sentence. Case (casus, from cado)



is, literally, a falling. Grammarians represented that form which a Noun takes when it is the Subject of a sentence, by an upright line, as AB, and likened the other forms to lines falling away from the perpendicular at various angles; as, AC, AD, AE, AF, &c. These they called Cases; and their series, the declension, declining, or sloping down, of the word. Afterwards, the Nominative or Subject case was called (with evident impropriety) Casus Rectus, the Upright Case, and the others (except the Vocative) Casus Obliqui, Oblique Cases; whereas the Stem (or Crude-form) of the word is more properly the upright line, and the several Cases, including the Nominative and Vocative, are branches deflecting from it. So, from the Stem nuc- (walnut-tree) the Cases are: N.V. nuc-s (=nux), Acc. nuc-em, G. nuc-is, D. nuc-i, Ab. nuc-e.

B. The Relations which Cases fail to express are supplied by Prepositions; and in the languages of modern Europe the use of Prepositions prevails, and Declension is comparatively rare. Thus the languages derived from Latin (Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese) have only one Case-form in each Number for Nouns; English, two; German, four; but the Possessive Case in English is of limited use, and German Declension is freely developed only in the Articles. Of the ancient Aryan tongues, Sanskrit had the six Latin Cases and two more, the Instrumental and the Locative. Greek had only five cases in use, discarding the Ablative, the functions of which it divides between the Genitive and the Dative; but it retains traces of the Instrumental and the Locative. Latin retains many fragments of the Locative Case, as shown here and there in this Grammar; while the Pronominal forms, mīhi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis, ubi, ibi, together with the Cases in -bus, appear to spring out of the primitive Instrumental Case, though in meaning they have lost all connection with it.

C. The primary force of the Cases is a much debated and still undecided question. Modern Grammarians have been inclined generally to explain it by relations of place and extent; and there is much speciousness in the theory which, taking the Nominative as the moving agent, regards the Ablative as the point which motion leaves, the Accusative as that to which it extends, and the Dative as the point of rest. But this theory fails to account for the Sanskrit and Latin Genitive; and against it may be urged that it assigns to the Ablative a place which in Greek is taken by the Genitive, and also that the Latin Ablative includes uses hardly consistent with that which is here stated to be its distinctive use. In this book classical usage has been followed, but without prejudice (it is hoped) to the future study of philosophical grammar. *Causalis Clausula*, a Causal Clause; an Adverbial Clause introduced by quod, quia, quum, &c. § 152. Appendix II. p. 113.

Character (χαρακτήρ, an impressed mark), usually means the last letter of the Stem of an inflected word. § 11.

Circumstantive Relation, the relation in which a Word or Phrase stands to the Verb when it modifies it adverbially. Such is that of Adverbs, Prepositions with their Cases, the Ablative Case always, the Accusative Case often.

Clausula (claudere, to inclose), a Clause. This term is used to express any Subordinate Sentence. Co-ordinate Sentences are also called Clauses, but are not discussed in elementary Grammar. See *Enthesis*.

Collectiva (colligere, to gather together), Collective Nouns or Nouns of Multitude. N. S. I. E. 3.

Comparativa Clausula, a Comparative Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by quasi, tamquam, ut si, &c. P. 165.

**Complementum* (comple, to complete), the Complement, that which completes the construction of a Simple Sentence, when its Verb is Copulative (or Factive). §§ 87, 93, 99. N. S. II. See *Predicate*.

**Compositum Subjectum*, a Composite Subject. § 92. N. S. I. F.

Concessiva Clausula (concedere, to grant), a Concessive Clause, an Adverbial Clause introduced by etsi, quamvis, &c. P. 165.

Conditionalis Clausula (conditio, a condition), the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence. P. 164.

Congruentia (congruere, to agree), Agreement. §§ 88-92.

Conjugatio (conjugare, to yoke together), the Flexion of Verbs. §§ 11 48.

Conjunctio (conjungere, to unite), Conjunction. Gr. σύνδεσμος. §§ 85 152.

Conjunctivus Modus, Conjunctive Mood; the Thought-mood in Latin, used purely or subjunctively. §§ 42, 65, 148. Pp. 152, 157.

Consecutio Temporum (consequi, to ensue), Consecution of Tenses. § 155. P. 172.

Consecutiva Clausula, a Consecutive Clause; an Adverbial Clause denoting consequence, introduced by ut, so that. P. 162.

Consonantes Litterae (consonare, to sound with). Consonants. § 3.

SCHEME OF THE CONSONANTS.

	MUTES		LIQUIDS			SPIRANTS				DOUBLE
	Hard	Soft	Raque	Smooth	Nasal	Sibilant	Pure	Mixed	Semivowel	
GUTTURAL, or Throat sounds }	c (k, q)	g	..	..	..	..	h	..	..	x
DENTAL, or Teeth sounds }	t	d	r	l	n	s	..	..	j	z
LABIAL, or Lip sounds }	p	b	..	..	m	..	..	f	v	

Contractio (contrahere, to draw together), the fusion of two vowels into one long one; as, fidei, fide.

Copulative Verba (copulare, to couple), Copulative Verbs. § 87. N.S. II.

Besides Sum, they comprise the Verbs—

forem, *might be*
 fio, *become*
 appareo, *appear*
 existo, *stand forth*
 evado, *turn out*

audio, *am called*
 maneo, *remain*
 nascor, *am born*
 videor, *seem*

with some others: also, many Passives of a class of Verbs called *Facitive* (facere), because they contain the idea of *making*, by deed, thought, or word: such Passives are—

efficior, *am made*
 creor, *am created*
 designor, *am marked out*
 legor, *am chosen*
 eligor, *am elected*
 declaror, *am declared*
 renuntior, *am proclaimed*
 nominor, *nuncupor, am named*
 salutor, *am saluted*
 appellor, *vocor, am called*
 inscrihor, *am entitled*
 aestimor, *am esteemed*
 numeror, *am reckoned*

credor, *am believed*
 existimor, *putor, am thought*
 ducor, *am deemed*
 haheor, *am held*
 censeor, *am counted*
 agnoscor, *am acknowledged*
 dicor, *am said*
 narror, *am related*
 feror, *perhibeor, trador, am reported*
 invenior, *reperior, am found*
 prehendor, *am discovered*
 arguor, *probor, am proved.*

Correlativa, Pronouns and Particles which mutually correspond in their several classes. § 38. N. E. III.

D.

Dativus Casus (dare, to give; Gr. δοτική πρῶσις), the Dative (Receptive) Case. §§ 104–109. N.S. IV.

Declinatio (declinare, to slope down), the Flexion of Nouns. § 12. See Case.

Defectiva (deficere, to fail), Words wanting some forms. §§ 25, 74.

Deminutiva (deminuere, to lessen). N. E. I. D. 2.

Deponens Verbum, a Deponent Verb, so called because it lays aside (deponit) Active form, having Active sense. § 40.

E.

Ellipsis (ἐλλείπειν, to leave out), a Figure of Syntax. § 158. N.S. I. E. 1.

Enclitica, (ἐγκλίπειν, to lean on), words which throw back their accent on the word before them: as, -quē, -vē, -nē.

**Enthesis* (ἐντίθεσθαι, to place in), a group of words, sometimes one word, forming an abbreviated Adjectival or Adverbial Clause. An Ablative Absolute is usually an Adverbial Enthesis of Time, Cause, or Condition. See *Attributum*.

Enuntiatio (enuntiare, to state), a statement; the first and principal of the three forms of a Simple Sentence. P. 155.

Enuntiatio Obliqua, Oblique Enuntiation (indirect statement), the first and principal of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Its chief form is the Infinitive Clause (Accusative-and-Infinitive). Pp. 155, 158, 161

Epithet (ἐπιθετον), an Adjective simply qualifying a Noun: *vir bonus*, a good man. § 87. See *Attributum*.

F.

Factiva Verba (facere, to make), Factive Verbs. § 99. N. S. III. D.

Figura, *Figure* (figura, to fashion), a term used in Grammar for a 'fashion' which departs from ordinary use. Figures are either of Etymology (as Contraction), of Syntax (as Ellipsis), of Prosody (as Synaloepha), or of Rhetoric (as Metaphora).

Finalis Clausula (finis, end), Final Clause; an Adverbial Clause, expressing purpose: introduced by *ut*, *in order that*; *ne*, *lest*, &c. P. 163.

Finitum Verbum, Finite Verb; a term comprising the three moods of a Verb, which have limits (fines), especially of Person, from which the other forms (hence called *Verbum Infinitum*) are free. § 42.

Flexio (flectere, to bend), Flexion; also called Inflection. § 11.

G.

Genetivus (γενική πρῶσις), the Genitive (Propriative) Case. § 126-136. N. S. VI.

Genus (kind), Gender; the distinction of Nouns, as Masculine (m.), Feminine (f.), or Neuter (n.), that is, *neither* of the two former.

Gerundium: *Gerundivum* (gerere, to perform). The Gerundive is the Latin Participle in *dus*, and the Gerund is probably its Neuter Singular, declined as a Substantive, and attached to the Infinitive Verb-noun. The Gerundive seems to have been originally a Present Participle (*oriundus*, *volvenda dies*, etc.), but whether Active or Passive is disputed. § 140. N. S. VII.

Graecismus, Graecism; the imitation of a Greek idiom in Latin.

H.

Historic Infinitive, the Infinitive used in direct predication for a Finite Verb. § 140, 2. N. S. VII. A.

I.

Imperativus Modus (imperare, to command), the Will-mood in Verbs, which commands or entreats. § 42. Pp. 150, 151.

Impersonalia Verba (in, not, persona, person), Impersonal Verbs, which cannot take a Personal Pronoun as Subject. §§ 75, 145. N. S. IX. F.

Indicativus Modus (indicare, to show), the Fact-mood in Verbs. § 42. P. 150.

Infinitiva Clausula, the Infinitive Clause: the Substantival Clause called Accusative and Infinitive. See *Enuntiatio Obliqua*.

Infinitivum (Nomen), the Verb-noun Infinitive. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII.

Infinitum Verbum. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII. See *Finitum Verbum*.

Interjectio (interjicere, to throw between). §§ 86, 137.

N

Interrogatio Infinitiva, the Infinitive Clause used as an indignant question. P. 161.

Interrogatio Obliqua, Oblique Interrogation. As Direct Interrogation is one of the three forms which a Simple Sentence may assume, so Oblique or Indirect Interrogation is one of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. § 149. Pp. 155, 158, 162.

Intransitiva Verba, Intransitive Verbs; Verbs which do not regularly take an Accusative of the Object. N. S. III. D. See *Transitiva*.

K

Kalendarium, the Calendar or plan of the days of the Roman month, so called from *Kalendae*, the *Calends*, or first day in it. N. E. IV. C.

L.

Locativus (locus, place), Locative Case; a case existing in Sanskrit, of which fragments remain in Greek and Latin. § 121. N. S. V. G. 2.

M.

Mobilia Substantiva (mobilis, moveable). Substantives which have a Feminine corresponding to a Masculine form. N. E. I. D. 1.

Modus (manner), Mood; that Accident of a Verb which shows the manner in which its action or state is conceived of. § 42. P. 150

N.

Negativæ Particulæ (negare, to deny), Negatives. § 82. N. S. IX. A.

Nomina (Gr. ὀνόμα, a name), Nouns comprise Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns; but the term is often used when Substantives alone are meant. § 9.

Nominativus Casus (nominare, to name. Gr. ὀνομαστική πτῶσις). §§ 87, 88, 93. See *Case*.

**Noun-term*, a Substantive, or what may stand for a Substantive; as Adjective, Pronoun, Verb-noun or Substantival Clause. § 87. N. S. I. C.

Numeralia, words representing Number. N. E. IV. A.

Nummaria Res, Roman money. N. E. IV. D.

O.

Objective Relation, that of the Accusative of the Nearer Object to a Transitive Verb. N. S. III.

Objectum (obicere, to cast in the way), Object; that which is affected by action: if directly affected it is called Nearer Object (Accusative), if indirectly, Remoter Object (Dative). N. S. III. IV.

Obliqua Oratio (Oblique Discourse), any statement, command, or question expressed in indirect construction. This term includes the three Substantival Clauses. Oblique Enuntiation, Petition, and Interrogation, though sometimes used with special reference to the construction of Accusative-and-Infinitive (Infinitive Clause), which is the chief form of Oblique Enuntiation. Pp. 154, 156, 167, &c.



Oblique Subject, the Accusative Subject of an Infinitive. § 94.

Oblique Complement, the Accusative Complement of an Oblique Copulative Clause. § 94. N.S. II. A., III. D.

P.

Participium (partem capere, *to take a share*), an Adjectival Verb-form which shares the functions of Adjective and Verb. §§ 45, 142. N.S. IX. D.

Partes Orationis, Parts of Speech, or Words. § 9.

Particulæ, Particles, or small Parts of Speech; a name given to the four undeclined Parts, and also including some which are only used in compound words; as, ambi-, re-, se-, in-, dis-. § 82, &c.

Partitiva Vocabula (partiri, *to divide*). N.S. VI. B.

Passiva Vox (pati, *to suffer*), the Passive Voice, or form used in Verbs to show that something is acted upon, and so 'suffers.' This Voice is proper to Transitive Verbs only; but many Intransitive Verbs use it in Impersonal construction. § 76. A Passive Verb is often Reflexive; as, vertor, *I turn myself*. For *Passive Construction* see N.S. IX. E.

Patronymicum (πατήρ, *father*; ὄνομα, *name*), Patronymic, a title expressing descent from a father or ancestor.

Perfectum (perficere, *to complete*) *Tempus*, the Perfect Tense, which in Latin has a double use. § 48. Pp. 151, 171.

Perfect-stem. §§ 46, 48.

Periphrastic Conjugation (περιφράζειν, *to speak circuitously*). § 64.

Petitio Obliqua. As Petition (command or entreaty) is the second of the three forms of Simple Sentences, so Oblique Petition is the second of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Pp. 155, 161, 171.

Phrasis (φράσις), a Phrāse; a combination of words, or a single word idiomatically used, containing a notion, but not forming a Clause or an Enthesis; as, multae artis, ruri, Preposition with Case, etc.

Position (situs), a term in Prosody to express that a vowel is short, long, or doubtful, by standing before other letters. § 162.

Predicate (praedicare, *to declare*), that member of a Sentence, by which something is declared of the Subject. Writers on Logic resolve every proposition into Subject, Copula, and Predicate. But in Grammar this would only mislead, for it is not in such form that authors write. Neither sum, nor any other Copulative Verb, exactly corresponds to the logical Copula; nor is the word, which any such Verb links to the Subject, in every instance identical with a logical Predicate. For these reasons (while Madvig and most other Grammarians are followed in allowing the term Predicate in Grammar to a Finite Verb) the term Complement is used to express the word or phrase linked by a Copulative Verb to the Subject, and so completing a Simple Sentence. P. 75.

Praepositio (praepondere, *to place before*), Gr. πρόθεσις. §§ 9, 83, 103, 122. N.S. IX. C.

Predicative Relation, the Relation existing between Subject and Verb of the Simple Sentence.

Present-Stem. §§ 11, 46. The Present-Stem of many Verbs differs from the True Stem. The chief variations are these:

1. *N* is inserted before the Consonant-character: as, *fi-n-do*, *fra-n-go*, &c. Before a labial this *n* becomes *m*: as, *la-m-bo*, *ru-m-po*.
2. *N* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, *si-n-o*, *li-n-o*; (*b*) to a Liquid-character: as, *tem-n-o*, *cer-n-o*, *sper-n-o*, *ster-n-o*. So *po-n-o* for *pos-n-o*.
3. *Sc* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, *pa-sc-o*, *ira-sc-or*, *cre-sc-o*, &c.; (*b*) to a Consonant-character with *i*: as, *ule-isc-or*. So *di-sc-o* for *dic-sc-o*; *na-n-c-isc-or* for *nac-or*.
4. *L* is doubled: as, *pel-l-o*, *tol-l-o*.
5. *T* is suffixed to Guttural-character: as, *flec-t-o*, *pec-t-o*, *nec-t-o*.
6. A Guttural is cast out: as, *stru-o* for *stru-c-o*, *vivo* for *vi-g-uo*.
7. The Stem is re-duplicated: as, *gi-g-no* for *gen-o*, *si-sto* for *sto*.

**Prolative Relation* (*proferre, to extend*), that in which Predication is extended by an Infinitive (therefore called *Prolative*), joined to Verbs, Participles, and, poetically, Adjectives. § 140. N. S. vii. *B.* Attentive consideration shows that this use of the Infinitive is really distinct from its Objective use, constituting a special relation in grammar, and requiring a distinctive appellation.

Pronomen (Gr. *ἄντωνυμία*), an inflected Part of Speech, ranking among Nouns, and so called because it is a substitute for a name. § 38.

Propria Nomina, Proper Names; Nouns *peculiar* to Person or Place.

Propriative Relation, that of the Genitive to the word proper to it. § 126.

Prosodia (*προσῳδήν, to sing in accord*), Prosody; that division of Grammar which treats of Quantity of Syllables and of Rhythm. The Laws of Metre are usually comprised in it. § 161. Notes.

Protasis. See *Apodosis*.

Q.

Qualitative Relation. See *Attributum*.

R.

Receptive Relation (*recipere, to receive*), that of the Dative, as Case of the Recipient, to the governing word. § 104-109. N. S. iv.

Recta Oratio, Direct Discourse, in a Principal Sentence, as distinguished from *Oratio Obliqua*. Pp. 155, 156.

Reduplicatio (*reduplicare, to redouble*), Reduplication; a peculiar mutation of form, by which the sense of words is varied, in Greek, Latin, and other languages. In Latin, its chief use is in forming the Perfect-stem of Verbs. See §§ 48, 81 II. (5), III. 9.

Reflexiva Pronomina (*reflectere, to bend back*), Reflexive Pronouns: *se*, with its Possessive *suus*; so called, because they 'bend back' their relation to the principal noun preceding; generally (but not always) the Subject of the Principal Sentence. § 145. N. S. viii.

Relation. The Relations of Construction existing between the words of a Simple Sentence are eight in number: (1) Predicative; (2) Qualitative; (3) Objective; (4) Receptive; (5) Circumstantive; (6) Propriative; (7) Prolative; (8) Annexive. See these Words.

Relativum Pronomen (*referre, to refer*), the Relative Pronoun *qui*, so called because *referred* to an Antecedent Noun-term. See § 91.



N. S. 1. From this root are derived the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and the Particles connected with them.
Root, the common part of kindred words. § 11.

S.

Scansio (scandere, *to climb*), the measurement of feet in a verse.

Sententia (sentire, *to express thought*), a Sentence. § 87. Sentences are Simple or Compound. A Simple Sentence is either a statement (enuntiatio), a command or request (petitio), or a question (interrogatio). A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences, one being the Principal, the rest either Co-ordinate (not dependent) or Subordinate (dependent in construction); which two kinds are called Clauses. Pp. 155, &c.

Stem, the crude form of a Word without the Endings: as, mensa-, mone-. A Vowel-stem stripped of its vowel is called a Clipt Stem: as, mon- for mon-e-.

Subjectum (subjicere, *to place under*), Subject. §§ 87, 88, 93, 94. N. S. i. ii.

**Subobliqua Clausula*, a Suboblique Clause, subordinate to *Oratio Obliqua*. If *Oratio Obliqua* is contained in the sense only, not in form, the Clause is said to be 'Subobliquae potestatis,' of Suboblique power, or 'virtually Suboblique.' Pp. 156, 159, 168, &c.

Substantival Clauses, the three forms of a Simple Sentence (statement, command, question) in Oblique Construction. See *Oratio Obliqua*.

Substantivum (substare, *to stand beneath*), a Substantive, the first of the inflected Parts of Speech. §§ 9 I. (1), 12, 16, etc.

Superlatus Gradus (superferre, *to carry above*), the highest Degree of a Compared Adjective or Adverb. §§ 35-37.

Supine-Stem. § 47.

Supinum, Supine, an unmeaning term, applied to the two Cases of the Verb-noun which end in *um* and *u* severally. §§ 45, 141 (5) (6).

Syllaba (συνλαμβάνειν, *to take together*), a Syllable; that is, one or more letters pronounced in a breath. § 5.

Syncope (συνκόπτειν, *to cut short*), the shortening of a word by casting out an inner vowel: as, patri for pateri.

Synesis (σύνεσις, *meaning*), a Figure of Syntax. § 160. N. S. i. E. 3.

Syntaxis (συντάσσειν, *to arrange together*), that division of Grammar which treats of the construction of sentences.

T.

Temporalis Clausula, a Temporal Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of Time. P. 163.

Tempus (time), Tense; that which marks the time of action in Verbs. §§ 43, 48.

**Trajectiva* (trajicere, *to throw over*); Verbs and Adjectives, which by their meaning suggest a Recipient. Pure Trajective Verbs have a Dative alone (Cui-Verbs): Trajective Verbs Transitive (Cui-quid Verbs) have Accusative and Dative. § 104. N. S. iv.

Transitiva Verba (transire, *to pass over*), Verbs which pass over to an Accusative of the nearer Object. § 96 N. S. iii.

V.

Verb of Being (sum, esse). Gr. *ῥῆμα ὑπαρκτικόν*. This has been translated by Latin Grammarians, 'Verbum Substantivum'; a term not true to the Greek, and confusing to learners. Sum is the Verb of Being, essential to the expression of thought. Hence we find its root widely spread throughout the languages of the world. §§ 49, 87. N.S. II.

Verbum (Gr. *ῥῆμα*, the word), Verb; an inflected Part of Speech, so called, as the *Word* which effects discourse. §§ 9, 39, etc.

**Verb-Noun*. All the parts of the Verb Infinite are Verb-Nouns Substantival or Adjectival, uniting functions of the Verb with functions of the Noun. §§ 45, 140, etc. N.S. I. C.

Vocales (vox, voice), Vowels. § 2. Their relations are shown in the following scheme, in which the sign *┐* represents the vowel wavering between *i* and *u* (*optimus*, *optūmus*), which the Emperor Claudius brought for a time into public use:

Standard vowel

a

Sharp medial *e* o Flat medial

Sharp semiconsonant *i* *┐* u Flat semiconsonant
Medial

J and *u* did not exist anciently. *J* represents the consonant power of *i* (i-consonans); *u* the vowel-power of *v* (v-vocalis).

Vocativus Casus (vocare, to call), the Case of one addressed, which stands out of the Sentence. §§ 14, 87, 137.

Vowel-change, the weakening or strengthening of Vowels, which occurs in Flexion, Derivation and Composition. §§ 81, 84. N.E. II.

Vox, Voice; that form, by which Verbs are shown as *doing* or *suffering*. § 39.

Note.—How the Romans spoke Latin can never be known with precision. Some sounds are lost: as those of *f*, *ch*, *th*, *ph*, *rh*, *cl*, *en*. Others are matter of conjecture: as that *ae*=*ai* in French *Mal*, *oe*=*oy* in boy, *au*=*ow* in cow; *y*-vowel=Greek *v*. It is probable that *c*=*k* always, never being soft as in *cell*, *city*; that *g* also was hard always, as in *get*, *gird*, never soft, as in *gentle*, *origin*; that *v*=Engl. *w* nearly, and *l*-consonans (*j*)=English *y*-consonant.

As to vowels, in the Grammar the following line is given to express the long and short sounds of each; the first four words being sounded as in French, the last as in Italian:

Quīnine, dēmēsne, pāpā, prōpōse, Zōlā.

. If four sounds are allowed to each vowel, and shown as 1. *Italic*: 2. with short mark *˘*: 3. *Roman*: 4. with long mark *—*; we may take the following words as containing them: *a*, āl-a-mān-dās; *e*, rē-vell-e-rēs; *i*, in-scrib-i-tis; *o*, de nōv-o corp-o-re; *u*, fulg-u-ra mū-tū-a.

The learner must take care never to sound *a* as in *bāse* (which is the long *e*-sound); never to sound *e* as in *thēse* (which is the long *i*-sound); nor *i* as in *ico*; nor *u* as in *ūse*; these being diphthong sounds. See 'Public School Latin Grammar,' Appendix, B.

GRAMMAR-SCHOOL TEXTS,

WITH ENGLISH VOCABULARIES.

EDITED BY JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. OXON.

GREEK TEXTS:—

FABLES from ÆSOP, & MYTHS
from PALÆPHATUS. 1s.

EURIPIDES, Hecuba. 2s.

HOMER, Illad. Book I. 1s.

HOMER, Odyassey. Book I. 1s.

LUCIAN, Select Dialogues. 1s.

XENOPHON, Anabasis. Books I.
III. IV. V. VI. 1s. 6d. each.

XENOPHON, Anabasis. Book II. 1s.

XENOPHON, Anabasis. Book VII. 2s.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS, Book I. Text only. 3d.

THE FOUR GOSPELS IN GREEK, with an English-Greek
Lexicon. Edited by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. Oxon. Square 32mo. 5s.

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL. Price
2s. 6d.

ST. MARK'S GOSPEL. 1s. 6d.

ST. LUKE'S GOSPEL. 2s. 6d.

ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL. 1s. 6d.

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES.
Price 2s. 6d.

ST. PAUL'S EPISTLE to the
ROMANS. 1s. 6d.

LATIN TEXTS:—

CÆSAR, Gallic War. Books I. II. V. VI.
1s. each.

CÆSAR, Gallic War. Books III. and
IV. 9d. each.

CÆSAR, Gallic War. Book VII. 1s. 6d.

CÆSAR, Gallic War. Book I. Text
only, 3d.

CICERO, Cato Major (Old Age). 1s. 6d.

CICERO, Lælius (Friendship). 1s. 6d.

EUTROPIUS, Roman History. Books
I. and II. 1s.

EUTROPIUS, Roman History. Books
III. and IV. 1s.

HORACE, Odes. Books I. II. and IV.
Price 1s. each.

HORACE, Odes. Book III. 1s. 6d.

HORACE, Epodes and Carmen Seculare.
Price 1s.

NEPOS, Miltiades, Cimón, Pansania
Aristides. 9d.

OVID, Selections from the Epistles and
Fasti. 1s.

OVID, Select Myths from the Metamor-
phoses. 9d.

PHÆDRUS, Select Fables. 9d.

PHÆDRUS, Fables. Books I. & II. 1s.

SALLUST, Bellum Catilinarium. Price
1s. 6d.

VIRGIL, Georgics. Book IV. 1s.

VIRGIL, Æneid. Books I. to IV.
Price 1s. each.

VIRGIL, Æneid. Books VII. to XII.
Price 1s. 6d. each.

VIRGIL, Æneid. Book I. Text only. 3d.

LIVY, BOOKS XXII. and XXIII.

The Latin Text with English Explanatory and Grammatical Notes, and
a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D.
Oxon. 12mo. price 2s. 6d. each BOOK.

LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO. 39 Paternoster Row, London
New York, Bombay, and Calcutta.



WHITE'S LATIN DICTIONARIES

Square 12mo. 3s.

THE JUNIOR STUDENT'S LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.

Square 12mo. 3s.

THE JUNIOR STUDENT'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

Square 12mo. 5s.

THE JUNIOR STUDENT'S COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

LONGMANS' ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS.

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

Book I. With Notes, Introduction, and Vocabulary.

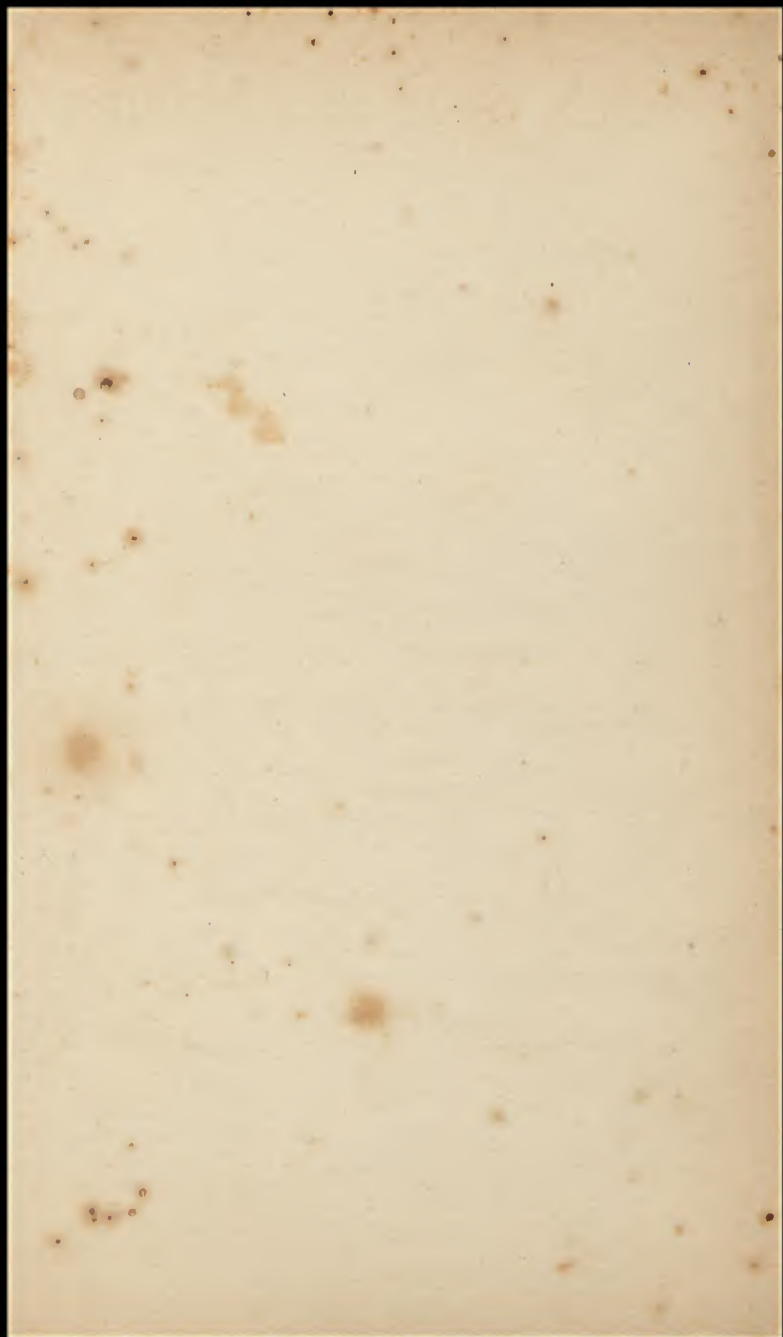
By J. W. BARTRAM, M.A.

Sometime Scholar at St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

With Folding-out Coloured Map, and 64 Maps, Plans and Illustrations
in the Text. Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.

LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO. 39 Paternoster Row, London
New York, Bombay, and Calcutta.





caso - frage
defectivos - menues - adverbos
- abundantes - lamas, v no. colubr, etc
anormalis pr. dho: sanse,









